

ENGLISH

6th Prim.
2026

FIRST TERM



By a group of specialists



Contents

Part (1) Revision on Structures 4

Part (2) **Unit (1)** Amazing places in Egypt 14

Unit (2) Our Nature 53

Unit (3) Community Builders 100

Review (1) Test (7) Based on Units 1-2-3 143

Unit (4) Resources Around Us 149

Unit (5) Made In Egypt 186

Review (2) Test (12) Based on Units 4-5 192

Unit (6) The Water Savers 240

Part (3) Listening Scripts 269

Part

1

General Revision on Grammar

مراجعة على أهم القواعد



Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

✓ Affirmative الإثبات	✗ Negative النفي	? Interrogative الاستفهام
I → like He } She } likes It } You } We } like They }	I → don't like He } She } doesn't like It } You } We } don't like They }	Do → I like? Does { he like? { she like? { it like? { you like? Do { we like? { they like?

نستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد المرات التي

نقوم فيها بعمل شيء ما.

Key words

always	often	usually	sometimes	never
--------	-------	---------	-----------	-------

1 Choose the correct answer:

- I (catch - catches - is catching - catching) the bus every morning.
- My mother always (cooks - are cooking - cooking - cook) delicious food.
- Mrs Mona (work - am working - works - working) at a language school.
- What (does - do - is doing - doing) you usually do in the evening?
- Nadia (go - are going - goes - going) to school by car.
- (Do - Does - Is - Are) you like speaking English?
- My sisters (do - is doing - does - doing) the homework at night.
- We usually (eat - eating - is eating - eats) yogurt for breakfast.
- Mom (has - have - are having - having) a sharp knife to cut the vegetables.
- My boss (ask - don't ask - asking - asks) me to do some jobs.

11. (Does - Do - Are - Is) Ahlam like fish?
 12. (Do - Does - Am - Are) you like reading books?
 13. How often (do - is doing - does - doing) you go to the club?
 14. How often (doing - does - are doing - do) Yassin tidy his room?
 15. Amgad (always has - has always - have - always have) a nice smile.

الفعل (يكون) في الماضي Verb to be in the past

was

I - He - She - It
singular noun (أي اسم مفرد)

were

You - We - They
plural noun (أي اسم جمع)



الزمن الماضي البسيط The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I He She It You We They played ...	I He She It You We They did not play ... didn't play ...	I play ? he play ? she play ? it play ? you play ? we play ? they play ? Did

Key words

توجد كلمات دالة على زمن الماضي البسيط مثل:

yesterday	أمس	in the past	في الماضي
ago	منذ	last (week)	(الأسبوع) الماضي

2 Choose the correct answer:

- Yesterday, my cousin (comes - came - coming - come) to visit us.
- I was late because I (miss - missed - is missing - missing) the train.
- My grandma (go - going - goes - went) to Alexandria two days ago.
- They (eating - am eating - ate - eats) pizza at a restaurant in the square.
- We (had - have - having - has) a great time and enjoyed a lot.

Revision

6. What did he (**eats** - **eating** - **ate** - **eat**) for lunch?
7. Did she (**go** - **going** - **goes** - **went**) to Aswan last week?
8. How (**does** - **did** - **doing** - **done**) you feel about the new theater?
9. It (**start** - **starting** - **starts** - **started**) to rain an hour ago.
10. I (**don't** - **didn't** - **aren't** - **doesn't**) see you last week.

3 Change the sentences into the negative form:

1. I came late yesterday. ▶
2. They went to school yesterday. ▶
3. I arrived on time. ▶
4. We were happy in the garden. ▶
5. She ate pasta an hour ago. ▶

4 Change the sentences into questions:

1. I went to the park **yesterday**. ▶?
2. They **helped** their mother last week. ▶?
3. We played **football** at the club. ▶?
4. Yes, I was **happy**. ▶?
5. No, she wasn't at the **zoo**. ▶?

Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → like He } She } likes It } You } We } like They }	I → don't like He } She } does n't like It } You } We } do n't like They }	was → I playing? was { he playing? { she playing ..? { it playing? { you playing ..? were { we playing? { they playing ..?

يُعَبَّر عن حدث وقع في الماضي واستغرق حدوثه فترة من الوقت.

- She **was helping** her mom on Friday morning.

5 Choose the correct answer:

- Ramy (**is - was - are - were**) fishing last week.
- Was he (**study - studies - studied - studying**) English with his dad?
- My father was (**work - worked - works - working**) all day yesterday.
- (**Was - Were - Are - Is**) he having breakfast at ten yesterday?
- What (**are - is - were - was**) you doing at 8 pm yesterday?
- (**Was - Were - Is - Am**) you reading a story at five yesterday?
- We (**are - were - is - was**) having a great time at the garden.
- The tiger (**am - were - was - are**) running at the forest.
- Was she (**help - helps - helped - helping**) her mother at the kitchen?
- Were they (**play - playing - plays - played**) tennis at five in the afternoon?
- What were you (**do - does - done - doing**) yesterday?
- (**Does - Are - Were - Was**) he swimming all day?
- I was (**listen - listened - listening - were listening**) to the radio yesterday evening.
- Some geese (**were - was - am - is**) swimming in the pond.
- My father (**was - is - are - were**) doing his work yesterday morning.

6 Complete the following sentences using: was - were

- The duck swimming.
- The cats running away.
- the farmer growing vegetables?
- They helping their mom.
- My mom cooking in the kitchen.
- I watching TV when the light went out.

Revision

7. We walking in a beautiful garden.
8. they watching a match or a film?
9. Manar taking a shower yesterday.
10. The students reading English at the class.



أي some - بعض

- We can use (**some - any**) before countable or uncountable nouns.
يمكن أن نستخدم (**some - any**) قبل الأسماء التي تُعد أو قبل الأسماء التي لا تُعد.
- We use (**some**) in affirmative sentences and (**any**) in questions and negative sentences.
نستخدم (**some**) في الجمل المُثَبِّتة وسؤالِي العرض والطلب، بينما نستخدم (**any**) في الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية.
- When we offer or ask for something politely, we use the word (**some**) not (**any**).
نستخدم (**some**) بدلاً من (**any**) في الجملة الاستفهامية (السؤال) عند عرض شيء أو طلب شيء بأسلوب مهذب.

7 Choose the correct answer:

1. There (**is - are - isn't - aren't**) some milk in the glass.
2. There (**are - isn't - is - aren't**) any water in the bottle.
3. There (**isn't - is - are - aren't**) one carrot on the shelf.
4. Do you have (**an - any - one - a**) biscuits?
5. I would like (**some - any - a - an**) eggs.
6. Are there any (**banana - bananas - one banana - a banana**)?
7. There (**is - are - isn't - aren't**) some fruit and vegetables on the plate.
8. Is there (**some - any - an - a**) butter in the pan?
9. How about buying some (**grapes - grape - the grape - a grape**)?
10. There isn't (**some - an - any - a**) jam in the fridge.
11. She wants (**any - an - a - some**) onion.
12. Is there (**a - the - an - any**) pineapple on the table?
13. Do you like (**some - an - any - a**) sugar in your tea?
14. Can I have (**some - a - an - any**) juice, please?

15. Is there (one - any - a - an) jam in the fridge?
16. Could you give me (some - an - any - a) salt, please?
17. Are there (an - any - some - a) tomatoes in the market?
18. Is there any (eggs - dates - apples - cheese) in the fridge?
19. (Am - Is - Do - Are) there any sugar in the supermarket?
20. Please, can I have some (apples - apple - one apple - an apple)?

8 Complete the following sentences using: some - any

1. There are oranges on the table.
2. Are there figs in the market?
3. Is there sugar in the cup?
4. There's cheese in the fridge.
5. Are there cups of coffee on the table?
6. He had sandwiches for dinner.
7. Can you give me water, please?
8. There's juice in the glass.
9. Do you have eggs?
10. Would you like orange juice?

لأن - because

● We can answer the questions that begin with (Why) by using (to) or (because).

● يمكن الإجابة على السؤال البادئ بـ (Why) باستخدام (to) أو (because).

● Why did she go to a restaurant? ► To have a sandwich.

● Why did Dad come home early? ► Because he felt tired.

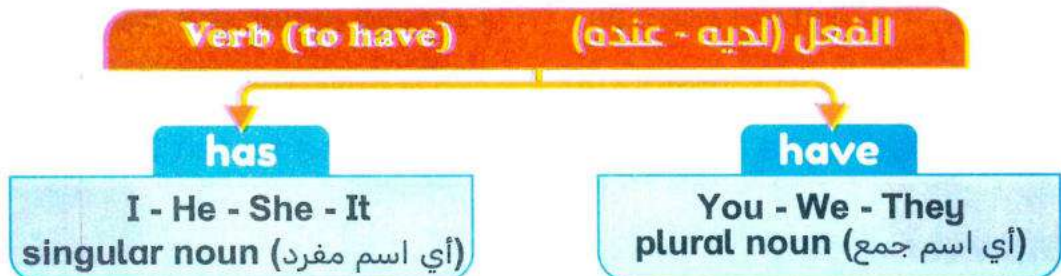
Note that:

لاحظ أن:

تُتبع (because) بجملة تامة بينما (to) تُتبع بمصدر الفعل، ومصدر الفعل هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافات، أي بدون إضافة (s - es - ing - ed.....).

9 Choose the correct answer:

1. I went to bed early (because - to - or - so) I was tired.
2. My brother bought new shorts (and - because - to - so) wear at the beach.
3. Why is she running? ► (So - Or - To - Because) she's late.
4. I went to the library (to - but - because - so) borrow a book.
5. Why do you go to the club? ► (Because - And - To - So) play with my friends.
6. She bought a new suitcase (because pack - pack - to pack - packs) her clothes.
7. I studied hard (to - or - because - so) get good marks.
8. Yassin went to the library (so - but - because - to) read books.
9. Why did Mai go to the kitchen? ► (It helps - So help - To help - Because help) her mom.
10. I went to the hall (to get - getting - gets - because get) my coat.
11. Amira bought sunglasses to (wear - wore - wears - wearing) on sunny days.
12. Ehab went to the market (so - or - to - because) buy pasta.
13. My father bought a new phone (to - because - so - or) call his friends.
14. She looks like a princess (because - but - to - so) she is so beautiful.
15. Why is Adel sad? ► (To - So - Because - But) he got bad marks.



Remember تذكّر

have	عند النفي	don't have
has	عند النفي	doesn't have
have	عند السؤال	Do (you) have?
has	عند السؤال	Does (she) have?

10 Choose the correct answer:

- I (am - has - are - have) a headache.
- We (are - is - have - has) a cold.
- Does Shady (had - having - has - have) a cough?
- She doesn't (having - have - has - had) cuts on her arms.
- My mother (has - are - have - is) a toothache.
- He (is - have - having - has) an earache.
- Do you (have - has - had - are) a stomachache?
- Does he (had - have - having - has) a cough?
- Ahmed (don't - doesn't - aren't - isn't) have a headache.
- You (are - has - is - have) a cold. Stay at home, please.

Ability (القدرة) / Inability (عدم القدرة) / الاستطاعة

can

يستطيع

can't

لا يستطيع

نعبر عن الاستطاعة أو عدم الاستطاعة في المضارع باستخدام (can - can't).

could

كان يستطيع

couldn't

لم يكن يستطيع

نعبر عن الاستطاعة أو عدم الاستطاعة في الماضي باستخدام (could - couldn't).

Note that:

لاحظ أن:

يأتي الفعل بعد (can - can't - could - couldn't) في المصدر أي بدون أي إضافات.

11 Choose the correct answer:

1. I (can - can't - aren't - couldn't) fly a kite. It's easy.
2. I wanted to see the bats, but I (can't - can - could - couldn't).
3. (Can - Could - Are - Couldn't) you make pasta? ► No, I can't.
4. Penguins (can - can't - aren't - couldn't) swim very well. They like water.
5. (Can - Could - Are - Can't) he get the full mark? ► Yes, he could.
6. Can you (come - came - coming - comes) with us?
7. I (will - can't - could - can) buy that expensive car. I have no money.
8. Could Taher (play - played - playing - plays) the match yesterday?



The Imperative صيغة الأمر

● Affirmative imperatives use the infinitive without (to):

● عند الأمر، نضع الفعل في المصدر في أول الجملة بدون (to).

► Open the door, please.

► Sit down, Ahmed.

● Negative imperatives use don't + infinitive without (to):

● عند النهي، نبدأ الجملة بـ (Don't) وبعدها الفعل في المصدر بدون (to).

► Don't eat in the library.

► Don't throw rubbish.

12 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Write - Writes - Writing - Wrote) your answer in short sentences.
2. (Don't eat - Eating - Eat - Eats) fruit and vegetables to stay healthy.
3. (Doesn't - Don't - Didn't - Do) waste your time.
4. (Listening - Listened - Listens - Listen) to your teacher carefully in the class.
5. Don't (shouts - shout - shouted - shouting) in the class.
6. (Come - Came - Comes - To come) to school early.
7. (Don't - Doesn't - Does - Do) the housework with your mom.
8. We will go to the park tomorrow. (Comes - Came - Coming - Come) early, please.
9. (Don't - Doesn't - Did - Do) eat in the class.

10. Don't (opens - open - opening - opened) your notebooks. Look at the board.



The Adverb (الظرف الحال)

- We make most adverbs by adding (ly) to the end of the adjective.
● عادةً ما يتكون الظرف بإضافة (ly) للصفة.
- The words "hard - fast" can be used as adjectives and adverbs:
● كلمتا "fast - hard" يمكن أن تُستخدمَا كصفات وظروف.
- The adverb of the adjective "good" is "well":
● الظرف من الصفة "good" هو "well".
- We use the adjective before a noun to describe it, but the adverb is used after a verb to describe it.
● الصفة تصف اسماً وتأتي قبله، بينما الظرف يصف فعلاً ويأتي بعده.

13 Choose the correct answer:

1. The tortoise walks (slow - tall - slowly - quick).
2. She can't run (slow - quick - hard - quickly) in the street.
3. I'm a (fast - slowly - carefully - quickly) rider.
4. He was (nervous - quietly - slowly - nervously) yesterday.
5. She speaks (nice - happy - angry - nicely).
6. The teacher is shouting (loud - angry - quick - angrily).
7. He is a (careful - carefully - quietly - carelessly) driver.
8. Wael can speak English (good - well - happy - bad).
9. I can ride my bike (fast - slow - angry - quick).
10. The boy is speaking (polite - good - politely - loud).



Amazing Places in Egypt

Unit 1 أماكن مذهشة فى مصر

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Talk about visiting a traditional place in Egypt.
- Talk about a day at school and your favorite activities.
- Identify and accurately pronounce the phoneme /ər/.

Listening

- Describe traditions and life in Egypt.
- Identify activities in different parts of Egypt.
- Describe school routines and favorite activities.

Reading

- Find key information in cultural, personal, and factual texts.
- Answer comprehension questions to show understanding of reading texts.

Writing

- Write sentences using the present simple correctly.
- Write an informal email describing a typical day at school.
- Create a poster about your governorate.

Lesson 1

A Day in Egypt



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



buy souvenirs

يشترى الهدايا التذكارية



bracelets

أساور



old coins

عملات قديمة



bake bread

يخبز الخبز



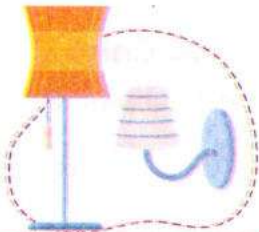
take photos

يلتقط صور



visit ancient sites

يزور مواقع أثرية



lamps

أباجورات - مصابيح



necklace

عقد



clothes

ملابس



make furniture

يصنع أثاث



walk to a small museum

يمشي إلى متحف صغير



play music

يعزف الموسيقى

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

tourists	سياح	workers	عمال
history	تاريخ	area	منطقة
smell (n)	رائحة	art	فن
Arabic designs	تصميمات عربية	carpenters	نجّارون
culture	ثقافة		

Adjectives

صفات

ancient	أثري - عتيق	great	رائع
busy	مزدحم - مشغول	wooden	خشبي
colorful	ملوّن	interesting	ممتع - شيق
exciting	مثير	beautiful	جميل
fun	ممتع	amazing	رائع - مذهش

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

It's a great day.	إنه يوم رائع.	walk through old streets	يتجول في الشوارع القديمة.
do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	enjoy the sound of old Cairo	أستمع بأصوات القاهرة القديمة
smile for the camera	يبتسم للكاميرا	learn about	يتعلم عن
it's fun to	انه من الممتع أن ...	buy ... from	يشترى من
join them for a few minutes	ينضم إليهم لبضع دقائق	by hand	يدويًا

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	p.p.
visit يزور	visited يُتعلّم	visited يُتعلّم
learn يتعلّم	learned	learned

Present		Past	p.p.
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched
smile	يتسّم	smiled	smiled
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	enjoyed
join	ينضم - يلتحق	joined	joined
work	يعمل	worked	worked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
make	يصنع	made	made
take	يأخذ - يلتقط	took	taken
stand	يقف	stood	stood
see	يرى	saw	seen
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
come	يأتي	came	come
spend	يقضي	spent	spent

Listen, look and repeat:

A Day in Egypt

يوم في مصر



It is a great day in Cairo. Maged visits Khan El Khalili with his family. It is very exciting! In the old streets, they can do many activities.

إنه ليوم رائع في القاهرة. يزور ماجد خان الخليلي مع عائلته وهذا أمر مثير للغاية! يمكنهم القيام بالعديد من الأنشطة في الشوارع القديمة.



First, they buy souvenirs from the market. There are many beautiful things like bags, lamps, and bracelets. His sister chooses a colorful necklace.

أولاً، يشترون الهدايا التذكارية من السوق. هناك العديد من الأشياء الجميلة مثل الحقائق، والمصاييح، والأساور، حيث تختار أخته قلادة ملونة.

Then, they walk through the old streets and watch people baking bread. The smell is amazing! They also see shops where workers make furniture by hand. It is interesting to watch them work.

ثم يمشون في الشوارع القديمة ويشاهدون الناس وهم يخبزون الخبز. الرائحة مذهلة! يرون أيضًا محلات حيث يصنع العمال الأثاث يدويًا. إنه من المثير للاهتمام مشاهدتهم وهم يعملون.

They take more photos in the old streets. There are many beautiful doors and buildings with Arabic designs. Maged stands near a big wooden gate and smiles for the camera. Then, they walk to a small museum. It has old coins, clothes, and tools from the past. They learn many new things about Egyptian history.

يلتقطون المزيد من الصور في الشوارع القديمة. هناك العديد من الأبواب والمباني الجميلة ذات التصاميم العربية. يقف ماجد بالقرب من بوابة خشبية كبيرة ويبتسم للكاميرا. ثم يمشون إلى متحف صغير. يحتوي على عملات قديمة، وملابس، وأدوات من الماضي. يتعلمون العديد من الأشياء الجديدة عن التاريخ المصري.

They also see some children playing with small drums in the street.

They laugh and enjoy the music. Maged's brother joins them for a few minutes. It is fun to play and enjoy the sounds of Old Cairo.

يرون أيضًا بعض الأطفال يلعبون بالطبول الصغيرة في الشارع. يضحكون ويستمتعون بالموسيقى. ينضم أخو ماجد إليهم لبضع دقائق. إنه لمتع اللعب والاستمتاع بأصوات القاهرة القديمة.

In the evening, they visit ancient sites near the area. They are big and beautiful! They take many photos of them.

في المساء، يزورون المواقع الأثرية القريبة من المنطقة. إنها كبيرة وجميلة! يلتقطون العديد من الصور لهم.

It is a fun day. He loves spending time in Egypt and learning about its culture.

إنه يوم ممتع. فهو يحب قضاء الوقت في مصر وتعلم ثقافتها.

Listen again and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's Book

1. It's a great day in Aswan. ()
2. The small museum has old coins. ()
3. The smell of the bread is amazing. ()
4. The ancient sites are small and busy. ()

Listen again and choose the correct answer:



Student's Book

1. In the evening, they visit the
 a) market b) museum c) ancient sites d) school
2. Maged's sister chooses a colorful
 a) skirt b) souvenir c) coin d) necklace
3. Maged's family learn many new things about the Egyptian
 a) history b) science c) museum d) art

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We went to the to buy souvenirs.
 a) school b) market c) hospital d) beach
2. Tourists come to Egypt to ancient sites and take photos.
 a) play b) walk c) smell d) visit
3. My dad is a carpenter. He can furniture.
 a) make b) buy c) stand d) choose
4. We walked to a small to learn about the Egyptian history.
 a) bread b) art c) museum d) school
5. Maged stood in front of the statue to a photo.
 a) join b) smile c) learn d) take
6. I heard a man music in the street.
 a) buying b) playing c) working d) learning

7. My sister bought a colorful from Khan El Khalili.
 a) necklace b) bread c) gate d) music
8. Carpenters in Damietta make furniture from
 a) wood b) clothes c) souvenirs d) culture
9. The museum had old and interesting things.
 a) bread b) coins c) sites d) tourists
10. The of fresh bread was so strong at the market.
 a) coin b) culture c) music d) smell

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

carpenter - market - music - walking - coins

Many tourists visit Khan El Khalili in Cairo. It's a busy ① where you can buy souvenirs, like necklaces or old ② People take photos and enjoy the smell of fresh bread. Children love ③ around and seeing handmade art. Some people play ④ in the street. Others stand and watch or join in with a smile.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Omar didn't want to go shopping, but his trip to Khan El Khalili changed his mind. As he walked through the busy market, he saw colorful lights, heard people playing music, and smelled fresh bread baking in ovens. He stopped to look at a shiny coin and a handmade necklace. His sister took many photos while their parents bought souvenirs. Then, they found a man making furniture by hand—he was a skilled carpenter. Omar felt excited. "This market is full of art and history!" he said with a smile. He couldn't wait to come back again.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Omar stopped to look at a shiny and a handmade necklace.
 a) photo b) toy c) coin d) skirt
2. Omar said the market was full of art and
 a) noise b) people c) history d) toys

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did Omar's sister do at the market?



4. What was the carpenter doing?



5. Give a suitable title to the text.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. went - museum - to - learn - new - to - the - things - **We**.



2. **Tourists** - souvenirs - like - buy - many - from - market - to - the.



3. history - learn - **People** - like - about - to - our.



4. they - **What** - market - the - do - buy - from?



5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. have you ever visited khan El Khalili?



2. she is wearing the necklace that she bought yesterday



6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guideline elements:

"Your last visit to the market"

▶ What did you buy from the market? ▶ Who did you go with?

.....

.....

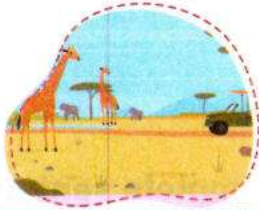
.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



National Park

محمية طبيعية



coral reefs

الشُعَب المرجانية



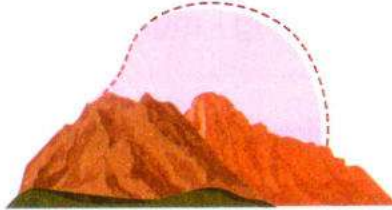
sea turtles

السلاحف البحرية



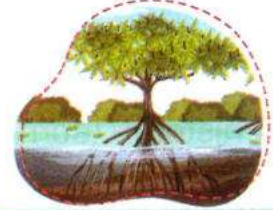
landscape

منظر طبيعي



mountains

جبال



mangrove trees

أشجار المانجروف



swim

يسبح



snorkel

يسبح باستخدام أنبوب التنفس



dive

يغوص (يسبح تحت الماء)

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

environment

بيئة

nature

الطبيعة

marine life

الحياة البحرية

Bedouins

البدو

protected area

منطقة محمية

rules

قواعد - قوانين

beach

شاطئ

Sinai

سيناء

Adjectives صفات

clean	نظيف	famous	مشهور
beautiful	جميل	colorful	ملون
clear	صافي	amazing	مذهل
local	محلي	peaceful	هادئ
safe	آمن	nearby	قريب

Expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم	follow the rules	يتبع القواعد
keep the park clean and safe	يحافظ على نظافة وأمان المنتزه	peaceful landscapes	مناظر طبيعية هادئة
learn about	يتعلم عن	a place for	مكان لـ
in the south	في الجنوب	known for	معروف - مشهور بـ

Definitions تعريفات

national park	a protected area of land kept safe for nature, animals, and plants
snorkel	to swim near the water's surface using a tube to breathe
dive	to swim underwater, often using special equipment like oxygen tanks
marine life	animals and plants living in the sea
Bedouins	local people who live in deserts and have their own culture

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
snorkel	يغطس بأنبوب التنفس	snorkeled	snorkeled
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
protect	يحمي	protected	protected

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
know	يعرف	knew	known
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept
dive	يغوص	dived - dove	dove - dived



Read and learn



The Beauty of Ras Mohamed

What do you know about Ras Mohamed?

Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in the south of Sinai, Egypt. It is known for its beautiful coral reefs, colorful fish, and clear blue sea. People from all over the world visit Ras Mohamed to swim, snorkel, and dive.



رأس محمد هي محمية طبيعية مشهورة تقع في جنوب سيناء بمصر. وهي معروفة بشعابها المرجانية الجميلة، وأسماكها الملونة، ومياهها الزرقاء الصافية. ويزور الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم رأس محمد للسباحة، والغطس بأنبوب التنفس، والغوص.

The nature in Ras Mohamed National Park is amazing. The park is home to many kinds of animals and plants. You can see sea turtles, dolphins, and many types of birds. There are also mountains and mangrove trees near the beach.

وتُعد الطبيعة في محمية رأس محمد منطقة مذهلة. المحمية تُعد موطنًا لأنواع عديدة من الحيوانات والنباتات. فيمكنك أن ترى السلاحف البحرية، والدلافين، وأنواعًا عديدة من الطيور. وهناك أيضًا جبال وأشجار المانجروف بالقرب من الشاطئ.

Ras Mohamed is a protected area. This means that people must take care of the land, sea, and animals. It is important to follow the rules to keep the park clean and safe.

تعتبر رأس محمد منطقة محمية، وهذا يعني أن على الناس أن يعتنوا بالأرض، والبحر، والحيوانات. فمن المهم اتباع القواعد للحفاظ على المحمية نظيفة وآمنة.

In the park, visitors learn about nature, marine life, and how to protect the environment. They also learn about the culture of the local Bedouins who live nearby.

ويتعلم الزوّار في المحمية عن الطبيعة، والحياة البحرية، وكيفية حماية البيئة. كما يتعلمون عن ثقافة البدو المحليين الذين يعيشون بالقرب من هناك.

Ras Mohamed is a great place for anyone who loves the sea, animals, and peaceful landscapes.

و تُعتبر رأس محمد مكانًا رائعًا لأي شخص يحب البحر، والحيوانات، والمناظر الطبيعية الهادئة.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's
Book

1. Ras Mohamed is in the north of Sinai. (.....)
2. You can't see any mountains in Ras Mohamed National Park. (.....)
3. Visitors can snorkel and dive in the blue sea in Ras Mohamed. (.....)
4. Ras Mohamed is a dangerous area. (.....)
5. The nature in Ras Mohamed is amazing. (.....)

Language In Use



The Present Simple

زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage

- We use the present simple to talk about things in general.

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للحديث عن الأشياء بشكل عام.

Things in general can be:

الأشياء بشكل عام يمكن أن تكون:

1. **Facts** → Lions eat meat.

(حقائق) الأسود تأكل اللحم.

2. **Habits - repeated actions** → I play every day.

(عادات - أشياء متكررة الحدوث) أَلعب كل يوم.

3. **Likes** → I like cake.

(ما تحب) أحب الكيك.

Affirmative Sentences الجمل المثبتة

Form

- Add **-s / -es / -ies** with the 3rd person singular (**he - she - it**). Add the base form only with (**I - we - you - they**).

أضف **-s / -es / -ies** في نهاية الفعل مع ضمير الغائب المفرد (**it - she - he**). وأضف الفعل الأساسي فقط مع الضمائر (**I - we - you - they**).



Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

▶ I **always** go to school. = I go to school every day.

أنا دائمًا أذهب إلى المدرسة. = أنا أذهب إلى المدرسة كل يوم. (100%)

▶ I **usually** go to school. = (80% - 90%) أنا عادةً أذهب إلى المدرسة.

▶ He **often** goes to school. = (60% - 80%) هو غالبًا ما يذهب إلى المدرسة.

▶ I **sometimes** go to school. = (40% - 50%) أنا أحيانًا أذهب إلى المدرسة.

▶ She **seldom** goes to school. = (10% - 20%) هي نادرًا ما تذهب إلى المدرسة.

▶ I **never** go to school. = (0%) أنا لا أذهب إلى المدرسة أبدًا.

Other key words:

من الكلمات التي تشير إلى المضارع البسيط:

every ... (day - week - month - year)

كل (يوم - أسبوع - شهر - سنة)

once a day

مرة في اليوم

on ... (Saturdays - Sundays - etc ..)

في أيام (السبت - الأحد - الخ ..)

twice a week

مرتين في الأسبوع

generally

عامة

three times a month

ثلاث مرات في الشهر

Negative Sentences الجمل المنفية

Subject	Auxiliary	Base Verb	Examples
I - We - They - You	don't	like	I don't like tea. أنا لا أحب الشاي.
He - She - It	doesn't		He doesn't like tea. هو لا يحب الشاي.

Yes/No Questions

Auxiliary	Subject	Base Verb	Examples
Do	I - you - we - they	like	Do you like tea? هل تحب الشاي؟
Does	he - she - it		Does he like tea? هل يحب الشاي؟

Examples:

▶ Do you like tea?

⇒ Yes, I do.

⇒ No, I don't.

▶ Does he like tea?

⇒ Yes, he does.

⇒ No, he doesn't.

Wh Questions:

Wh- word + do/does + subject + base verb.....?

Examples:

- ▶ What **do** they eat for breakfast?
- ▶ Where **does** he live?
- ▶ When **do** you usually get up?
- ▶ How **does** she go to school?

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. Ras Mohamed is a where people can see nature and animals.
a) school b) city c) national park d) factory
2. People love to see the in the sea because they are beautiful and colorful.
a) roads b) coral reefs c) trees d) mountains
3. We must keep the park and safe for animals and visitors.
a) clean b) dirty c) crowded d) broken
4. Many animals are part of the like fish and turtles.
a) desert b) jungle c) mountains d) marine life
5. The helps protect the land, sea, and animals.
a) zoo b) protected area c) playground d) hotel
6. People use a tube to breathe when they
a) snorkel b) run c) sing d) cook
7. The park has beautiful and landscapes.
a) noisy b) peaceful c) dangerous d) ugly
8. We must follow the to keep the environment safe.
a) games b) maps c) rules d) stories
9. The trees grow near the beach and help protect the coast.
a) mango b) apple c) olive d) mangrove
10. People come from all over the world to in Ras Mohamed.
a) visit b) study c) drive d) dive

2 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. She always in the sea when she visits Ras Mohamed.
a) swim b) swam c) swimming d) swims
2. The dolphin in the water every morning.
a) jump b) jumping c) jumps d) to jump
3. The Bedouins near Ras Mohamed.
a) live b) lives c) living d) has lived
4. Every year, people Ras Mohamed to see the coral reefs.
a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) visited
5. The sea blue and clear in the morning.
a) look b) looks c) looking d) to look
6. He like diving in deep water.
a) don't b) wasn't c) isn't d) doesn't
7. They visit Ras Mohamed often.
a) don't b) isn't c) doesn't d) not
8. you like snorkeling in Ras Mohamed?
a) Does b) Are c) Do d) Were
9. Where dolphins swim?
a) does b) is c) are d) do
10. The Red Sea many colorful fish.
a) contains b) contain c) to contain d) containing

3 Read and complete using the words in the box: Student's Book

landscapes - coral reefs - culture - protected - clean and safe

1. Ras Mohamed is a area, so people must care for it.
2. It's important to keep the park
3. People enjoy the quiet and beautiful in Ras Mohamed National Park.
4. Ras Mohamed is full of animals, plants, and colorful under its sea.
5. Visitors can learn about the of the local people.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

Many visitors come to Ras Mohamed every year. They enjoy the beautiful landscape and the clean environment. The area has clear blue water and a sandy beach where people can swim and relax. There is also amazing nature with many animals like dolphins and sea turtles. Near the beach, people can see mangrove trees and colorful fish. Visitors also learn about the culture of the local Bedouins who live nearby. They discover how people live in the desert and how they protect nature. Ras Mohamed is a great place to enjoy the sea, learn new things, and explore the beach.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Many visitors come to Ras Mohamed to enjoy the beautiful
a) building b) street c) landscape d) road
- People can see mangrove trees and fish in the water.
a) dry b) colorful c) plastic d) empty

B

Answer the following questions:

- What culture do visitors learn when visiting Ras Mohamed?
▶
- What kind of animals live in Ras Mohamed?
▶
- Summarize the text in two sentences.
▶

5

Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

- visit - People - Ras Mohamed - year - every.
▶
- is - famous - a - Ras Mohamed - Park - National.
▶
- is - The - sea - full - fish - of - colorful.
▶
- always - is - happy - She - active - and.
▶

5. protect - help - the park - nature - Does?

..... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My uncle (travel) to a different country every year. 
2. (Does) Basil and Nader go to work by car? 
3. She (don't) study in the afternoon. 
4. How (do) Omar get ready for the exam? 
5. My father (work) in a big office.
6. The teacher always (help) students with their homework.
7. They (doesn't live) near the school.
8. It (rain) a lot in winter.
9. Does he (reading) stories?
10. My mother and I usually (cleans) our flat together.

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. ras mohamed is a famous national park. 
2. What do the bedouins teach visitors 
3. The red sea has beautiful coral reefs. 
4. when does the train leave 

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guideline elements:

"The beauty of the sea"

▶ coral reefs - dive

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



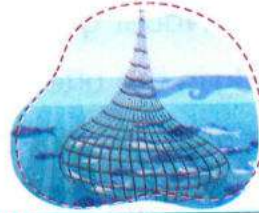
Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



fishermen

صيادون



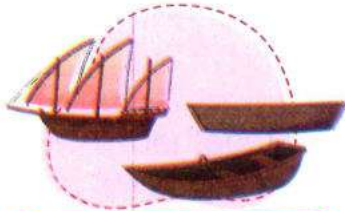
fishing nets

شباك صيد



fish factories

مصانع سمك



wooden boats

قوارب خشبية



repair boats

يصلح القوارب



catch fish

يصاد سمك



grow fruits

يزرع فواكه



harvest crops

يحصد المحاصيل



feed animals

يطعم الحيوانات



spin wool

يغزل الصوف



weave wool on looms

ينسج الصوف على النول



dye wool

يصبغ الصوف

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

rope	حبل	machine	آلة - ماكينة
string	خيط - وتر	cloth	قماش
village	قرية	breeze	نسيم
villagers	قرويين (سكان القرية)	project	مشروع
carpets	سجاد	responsibilities	مسؤوليات
rugs	بُسط (جمع بساط)	The western desert	المحراء الغربية
crafts	صناعات يدوية		

Adjectives

صفات

daily	يومي	western	غربي
quiet	هادئ	natural	طبيعي
wooden	خشبي	great	عظيم

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

know Egypt	اعرف مصر	support their families	يدعمون عائلاتهم
cool sea breeze	نسيم البحر العليل (الجميل)	on looms	على الأنوال
sit together	يجلسوا معا	on Fridays	في أيام الجمعة
Great job!	عمل رائع!	with natural colors	بألوان طبيعية

Definitions تعريفات

accompany

to go somewhere with another person

looms

devices used to weave threads into fabric

fishing net

a tool made of rope or string used to catch fish

dye

to color cloth or wool using a special liquid

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.p.
accompany	يصطحب	accompanied	accompanied
describe	يصف	described	described
repair	يصلح	repaired	repaired
harvest	يحصد	harvested	harvested
fish	يصطاد السمك	fished	fished
support	يدعم	supported	supported
water	يروي	watered	Watered
dye	يصبغ	dyed	dyed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.p.
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
catch	يمسك - يصطاد	caught	caught
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
feed	يطعم	fed	fed
spin	يدور	spun	spun
show	يعرض	showed	shown
weave	ينسج	wove	woven

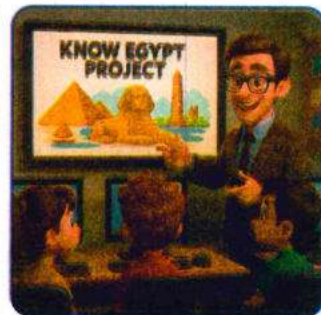


Read and learn



Mr. Nader: As part of our 'Know Egypt' project, we'll listen to four voice recordings from four students. They'll describe life, work, and daily responsibilities in their villages.

الأستاذ نادر: كجزء من مشروعنا "اعرف مصر"، سنستمع إلى أربع تسجيلات صوتية لأربعة طلاب. سيصفون الحياة والعمل والمسؤوليات اليومية في قراهم.



Amina: Hello! I'm Amina from Ezbet El Borg in Damietta. People here are fishermen. I accompany my father to catch fish early in the morning. Some villagers work in fish factories or repair boats. We eat fish almost every day and enjoy the cool sea breeze.

أمينة: مرحبًا! أنا أمينة من عزبة البرج في دمياط. الناس هنا صيادون. أرافق والدي لصيد السمك مبكرًا في الصباح. بعض القرويين يعملون في مصانع الأسماك أو يصلحون القوارب. نأكل السمك كل يوم تقريبًا ونستمتع بنسيم البحر العليل (الجميل).

Omar: My name is Omar. I live in Shakhlouba in Kafr El Sheikh near Lake Manzala. People fish using small wooden boats. I help my uncle clean the fishing nets. Some women also help catch fish. In the evening, we sit together and drink hot tea outside.

عمر: اسمي عمر. أنا أعيش في شخلوبة بكفر الشيخ بالقرب من بحيرة المنزلة. يصطاد الناس الأسماك باستخدام قوارب خشبية صغيرة. أساعد عمي في تنظيف شباك الصيد. بعض النساء يساعدن أيضًا في صيد السمك. في المساء، نجلس معًا ونشرب الشاي الساخن في الخارج.

Salma: Hi! I'm Salma from Qutur in Gharbia. My family grows fruits and vegetables. We water the plants, harvest the crops, and feed our animals. On Fridays, we go to the market to sell food. Life is quiet, but we are always busy.

سلمى: مرحبًا! أنا سلمى من قطور بالغربية. تزرع عائلتي الفواكه والخضروات. نسقي النباتات، ونحصد المحاصيل، ونطعم حيواناتنا. في أيام الجمعة، نذهب إلى السوق لبيع الطعام. الحياة هادئة، لكننا مشغولون دائمًا.

Hassan: Hi! I'm Hassan from Bashandy, a village in the Dakhla Oasis in the Western Desert. People in my village make carpets, rugs, and crafts. My family spins wool and weaves it on looms. I help my mother dye the wool with natural colors. Some visitors come to buy rugs from the village shops.

حسن: مرحبًا! أنا حسن من "بشندي"، وهي قرية في واحة الداخلة بالصحراء الغربية. يصنع الناس في قرأتي السجاد الكبير والسجاد الصغير (المشايات) والصناعات اليدوية. عائلتي تغزل الصوف وتنسجه على الأنوال. أساعد أمي في صبغ الصوف بالألوان الطبيعية. بعض الزوار يأتون لشراء السجاجيد الصغيرة "المشايات" من محلات القرية.

Mr. Nader: Thank you! These villages show how people in Egypt live, work, and support their families every day. Great job!

الأستاذ نادر: شكرًا لكم! هذه القرى تظهر كيف يعيش الناس في مصر ويعملون ويدعموا أسرهم كل يوم. عمل رائع!

Read and complete using the words in the box:



Student's
Book

spins - fishermen - harvest - fishing nets

1. In Amina's village, people are
2. In Omar's village, people fish using small
3. Farmers in Salma's village the crops.
4. Hassan's family wool and weaves it on looms.

Read and answer the questions:



Student's
Book

1. Do you live in a village or a city?
▶
2. What do people there do every day?
▶

Pronunciation



- To say the /er/ sound, open your mouth slightly, say “eh,” then add the /r/ sound. It’s one sound, like in “wear” or “stare”.

لنطق صوت /er/، افتح فمك قليلاً، وقل “eh”، ثم أضف صوت /r/. إنه صوت واحد، كما في كلمتي “wear” أو “stare”.



Phonics: /er/ sound:



UK /beə/

نطق بريطاني



US /ber/

نطق أمريكي

bear

دب

stare

يحملق / يطيل النظر

square

ميدان - مربع

scared

خائف

pear

كمثرى

care

يعتني

wear

يرتدي

airport

مطار

hare

أرنب بري

there

هناك

rare

نادر

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The farmer works hard to the crops in his village.
a) spin b) harvest c) dye d) accompany
- A is used by fishermen to catch fish from the sea.
a) clothes b) loom c) fishing net d) wool
- The device called a helps to weave wool into fabric.
a) rope b) loom c) string d) harvest
- To change the color of cloth, people them.
a) dye b) spins c) crops d) accompany
- The mother the wool before it is woven into carpets.
a) cooks b) harvests c) spins d) accompanies

Unit 1

6. The farmer's son will his father to the market.
a) harvest b) accompany c) spin d) dye
7. Many people in the work together.
a) village b) loom c) wool d) dye
8. The carpet is made on a wooden
a) bed b) boat c) loom d) rug
9. We the animals every day.
a) grow c) spin c) repair d) feed
10. Some people rugs and carpets by hand.
a) make b) harvest c) catch d) sell

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

farmers - fishing nets - spin - villages - dye

Many people live in villages in Egypt. In these ①, farmers grow crops like wheat and corn. Fishermen use ② to catch fish from the sea. Some families ③ wool and weave colorful carpets on looms. They ④ wool to change its color.

3 Match the words to their definitions:



'A'

1. accompany
2. looms
3. fishing net
4. dye

'B'

- a) to color cloth or wool using a special liquid.
- b) a tool made of rope or string used to catch fish.
- c) to go somewhere with another person.
- d) devices used for weaving to make cloth.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ali lives in a small village near the Nile River. Every morning, he watches the local fishermen use their small nets to catch fish. His grandmother often sits outside, weaving colorful patterns on a traditional loom, turning soft wool into beautiful carpets. In the afternoons, Ali loves to play in the fresh air with his friends while their parents work in the fields, preparing to harvest the crops. Life here is peaceful, with strong community traditions. The village celebrates many festivals throughout the year.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ali's village is located near the
 a) sea b) desert c) Nile River d) mountains
2. The village celebrates many throughout the year.
 a) holidays b) festivals c) sports d) birthdays

B Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the text.
 ►
4. What does Ali's grandmother usually do?
 ►
5. How is life described in Ali's village?
 ►

5 Listen and circle the word that ends with /er/ sound: Student's Book

1. ladder / hare / hammer
2. there / here / near
3. purse / nurse / pear

6 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. catch - to - fish - father - my - accompany - I.

▶

2. sit - and - We - outside - tea - drink.

▶

3. go - market - They - Fridays - the - on - to.

▶

4. a village - Do - you - in - live - a city - or?

▶ ?

5. like - job - to - would - do - you - What?

▶ ?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. my friend and i like to visit villages during the summer.

▶

2. mr Adel enjoys weaving carpets.

▶

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guideline elements:

"Your village"

▶ **farmers - fishermen**

▶

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 4-5

A Day in My School
Think and Create



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



wake up

يستيقظ



get dressed

يرتدي الملابس



have breakfast

يتناول وجبة الإفطار



pack school bag

يحزم الحقيبة المدرسية



go to school

يذهب إلى المدرسة



stand in line

يقف في الطابور



salute the flag

يحيي العلم



sing the national anthem

يغني النشيد الوطني



take out books

يخرج الكتب



begin lessons

يبدأ الدروس



have a break

يستريح



play in the playground

يلعب في الملعب

Unit 1



go home

يذهب للمنزل



do homework

يقوم بالواجبات المنزلية



go to bed

يذهب إلى النوم

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

subject	مادة دراسية	topics	مواضيع
chat	يتحدث - محادثة	break	استراحة
rest	يستريح / راحة	classroom	فصل دراسي

Subjects

المواد الدراسية

Arabic	اللغة العربية	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
math	الرياضيات	science	العلوم
social studies	الدراسات الاجتماعية	religion	التربية الدينية
computer	الحاسوب	P.E. (Physical Education)	التربية البدنية

Adjectives

صفات

typical	عادي - نموذجي	tricky	صعب - معقد
quick	سريع	tired	متعب
happy	سعيد	good	جيد

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

I hope you're doing well.	أتمنى أن تكون بخير	a typical day at my school	يوم معتاد في مدرستي
have a quick breakfast	يتناول فطورًا سريعًا	I try my best.	أبذل قصارى جهدي.
feel a bit tired	يشعر بقليل من التعب	What about you?	ماذا عنك؟

That's what a school day looks like on a typical day

for me. هكذا يبدو يومي الدراسي.

في يوم معتاد

at my school

في مدرستي at 6:30 a.m.

الساعة 6:30 صباحًا

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
hope	يأمل - يرجو	hoped	hoped
start	يبدأ	started	started
chat	يحدث - يتحدث	chatted	chatted
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	enjoyed
rest	يرتاح	rested	rested
try	يحاول	tried	tried
salute	يحيي (العلم)	saluted	saluted
end	ينتهي	ended	ending

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
get	يحصل على	got	gotten / got
sing	يغني	sang	sung
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
go	يذهب	went	gone
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
stand	يقف	stood	stood
sing	يغني	sang	sung
tell	يخبر	told	told



Read and learn



From : fady@gmail.com
To : mark@gmail.com
Subject : Daily School Life in Egypt

Search

Hi Mark,

How are you? I hope you're doing well. I want to tell you about a **typical** day at my school here in Egypt.

My day starts early. I wake up around 6:30 a.m., get dressed, and have a quick breakfast—usually bread, cheese, and fruit.

The School day begins at 7:30. We start it by standing in line, **saluting** the flag, and singing the **national anthem**. Then we go to our classrooms and begin our lessons. Our first subject is usually Arabic.

Next, we have subjects like math, English, and science. Some topics are a bit **tricky**, but I try my best. At around 10:15, we have a short break. I usually eat a sandwich, play with my friends, chat and laugh.

Later, we have more lessons like social studies, religion, or computer. I enjoy learning how to use the computer in class. However, my favorite subject is P.E.

The school day ends at 1:30 p.m. I usually feel a bit tired, but I'm happy after a good day. I go home, eat lunch, rest a little, and then do my homework.

That's what a school day looks like for me. What about you?

Bye for now,

Fady



من : mark@gmail.com

إلى : fady@gmail.com



Search

البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل

البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

الموضوع: الحياة اليومية في المدرسة في مصر

كيف حالك؟ أتمنى أن تكون بخير. أريد أن أخبرك عن يوم عادي في مدرستي هنا في مصر. يبدأ يومي مبكرًا. أستيقظ حوالي الساعة السادسة و النصف صباحًا، أرتدي ملابسي، وأتناول إفطارًا سريعًا - عادة خبز، جبن، وفواكه. يبدأ اليوم الدراسي في الساعة السابعة و النصف نبدأ بالوقوف في الطابور، تحية العلم، وغناء النشيد الوطني. ثم نذهب إلى فصولنا ونبدأ دروسنا. مادتنا الأولى عادة ما تكون اللغة العربية.

بعد ذلك، لدينا مواد مثل الرياضيات، واللغة الإنجليزية و العلوم، والعلوم. بعض المواضيع صعبة قليلًا، لكنني أبذل قصارى جهدي. نأخذ استراحة قصيرة في حوالي الساعة العاشرة و الربع. عادةً أتناول ساندويتش، ألعب مع أصدقائي، نتحدث ونضحك.

لاحقًا، لدينا دروس أخرى مثل الدراسات الاجتماعية، الدين، أو الحاسوب. أحب تعلم كيفية استخدام الحاسوب في الفصل. ومع ذلك، مادتي المفضلة هي التربية البدنية.

ينتهي اليوم الدراسي الساعة 1:30 ظهرًا. عادةً أشعر ببعض التعب، لكنني سعيد بعد يوم جيد. أعود إلى المنزل، أتناول الغداء، أرتاح قليلًا، ثم أؤدي واجباتي المنزلية.

هكذا يبدو يومي الدراسي بالنسبة لي. ماذا عنك؟

إلى اللقاء الآن،

فادي

Choose the correct answer:



Student's Book

- In the morning, students sing the national
 a) song b) poem c) anthem d) line
- Fady's first subject is usually
 a) English b) Arabic c) math d) science
- At 10:15, students have a short
 a) lesson b) class c) walk d) break
- Fady usually feels a bit after school.
 a) relaxed b) tired c) quiet d) worried



Tip!

- You can send an informal email to a friend or someone you know very well. Make sure you use the present simple tense to talk about your routine or typical day.

يمكنك إرسال بريد إلكتروني غير رسمي إلى صديق أو شخص تعرفه جيداً. تأكد من استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن روتينك أو يومك المعتاد.



Tips for Writing an email

1 Open with a friendly remark:

- ▶ Example: "How are you? I hope you're doing well. I wanted to tell you about a normal day at my school here in Egypt."

ابدأ بجملة ودية:

مثال: "كيف حالك؟ أتمنى أن تكون بخير. أردت أن أخبرك عن يوم دراسي معتاد في مدرستي هنا في مصر."

2 Keep Paragraphs Short and Focused:

- ▶ Devide your thoughts into smaller paragraphs. This makes the email easier to read.
- ▶ Example: He uses short paragraphs for different parts of his school day (morning, classes, break, end of day).

اجعل الفقرات قصيرة ومركزة:

قسّم أفكارك إلى فقرات أصغر. هذا يجعل البريد الإلكتروني أسهل في القراءة.

مثال: يستخدم فقرات قصيرة لأجزاء مختلفة من يومه الدراسي (الصباح، الحصص، الاستراحة، نهاية اليوم)

3 Be Personal and Share Details:

- ▶ Informal emails are about connecting. Share personal experiences, thoughts, and feelings.
- ▶ Example: He describes his breakfast, his favorite subjects, what he does at break, and how he feels at the end of the day.

كن شخصياً وشارك التفاصيل:

رسائل البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمية تدور حول التواصل. شارك التجارب والأفكار والمشاعر الشخصية.

مثال: يصف إفطاره، موادّه المفضلة، ما يفعله في الاستراحة، وشعوره في نهاية اليوم.



Project

Making a Poster About Daily Life in a Governorate

SB

1



People wake up early, clean the house and prepare breakfast.

يستيقظ الناس مبكرًا، وينظفون المنزل، ويحضرون الفطور.

2



Many people work on farms. They grow cotton, beans, and vegetables.

يعمل العديد من الناس في المزارع. يزرعون القطن، والفاول، والخضراوات.

3



Some people work in factories. They make cement and clothes.

يعمل بعض الناس في المصانع. يصنعون الأسمنت والملابس.

4



At noon, families eat lunch together. They eat rice, bread, and vegetables.

في الظهيرة، تتناول العائلات الغداء معًا. يأكلون الأرز، والخبز، والخضراوات.

Exercises

on

Lessons

4
& 5

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. In the morning, we and get ready for the first lesson.

a) play in the playground

b) rest

c) take out books

d) break

2. Every morning, students stand in line to and sing the national anthem.

a) salute the flag

b) chat

c) play

d) break

3. My favorite is social studies because I enjoy learning about history.
 a) playground b) cement c) break d) subject
4. Sometimes math can be, but I still try my best.
 a) laugh b) easy c) tricky d) rest
5. During break time, we love to and laugh with our friends.
 a) sleep b) chat c) work d) salute
6. Many people work in where they make cement and clothes.
 a) subjects b) playgrounds c) factories d) farms
7. Other people work on and grow vegetables.
 a) farms b) breaks c) tricky d) factories
8. A day at school includes different subjects and activities.
 a) tired b) tricky c) typical d) national
9. P.E. means We usually play games and run during this class.
 a) Public English b) Physical Education
 c) Personal Effort d) Primary Exam
10. After school, we often because we feel very tired.
 a) flag b) subject c) rest d) chat
11. We talk about many in our social studies class.
 a) topics b) breaks c) laughs d) cars

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

homework - chat - salute - wake up - pack

Every day, I follow the same morning routine. I usually ① at 6:30 a.m. and get dressed quickly. After a quick breakfast, I ② my schoolbag and leave the house. My dad drives me to school, where we all stand in line and ③ the national flag. After school, I like to ④ with my family for a few minutes before I rest and prepare for the next day.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. The - salute - students - the - flag - morning - in - the.

.....

2. breakfast - has - Amir - day - quick - a - every.

.....

3. at - day - The - ends - 2:30 - school.

.....

4. subjects - learns - different - Samira - in - class.

.....

5. school - your - about - Tell - day - me.

.....

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what time do you usually go home from school

.....

2. every morning, i wake up at six a.m.

.....

5 Write an email of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

Write an email to your friend Ahmed telling him about your daily routine. Your email is nader@gmail.com and you friend's email is ahmed@gmail.com:

► pack my schoolbag - salute the flag

...	📍	☆	📎	△	🗑️	✕
From	:					
To	:					
Subject	:					
.....						
.....						
.....						
.....						

Review on Unit 1

Main Vocabulary

bake bread	يخبز	visit ancient sites	يزور مواقع أثرية
bracelets	أساور	wake up	استيقظ
buy souvenirs	يشترى الهدايا التذكارية	wooden boats	قوارب خشبية
catch fish	يصطاد سمك	take photos	يلتقط صور
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	lamps	أباجورات - مصابيح
fish factories	مصانع لتصنيع السمك	necklace	عقد
fishermen	صيادون	clothes	ملابس
fishing nets	شبكة صيد	make furniture	يصنع الأثاث
get dressed	ارتد ملابسك	walk to a small museum	يمشي إلى متحف صغير
go to school	اذهب إلى المدرسة	play music	يعزف موسيقى
have breakfast	تناول الافطار	swim	يعوم
landscape	منظر طبيعي	snorkel	يسبح باستخدام أنبوب التنفس
mangrove trees	أشجار المانجروف	dive	يغوص (يسبح تحت الماء)
mountains	جبال	grow fruits	يزرع فواكه
National Park	محمية طبيعية	harvest crops	يجمع المحاصيل
old coins	عملات قديمة	feed animals	يطعم الحيوانات
pack school bag	حزمة حقيبة مدرسية	spin wool	يغزل الصوف
repair boats	يصلح القوارب	weave wool on looms	ينسج الصوف على النول
sea turtles	الساحف البحرية	dye wool	يصبغ الصوف
stand in line	الوقوف في طابور		

The Present Simple زمن المضارع البسيط

- We use the present simple to talk about things in general.

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للحديث عن الأشياء بشكل عام.

Things in general can be:

الأشياء بشكل عام يمكن أن تكون:

1. Facts → Lions eat meat.

(حقائق) الأسود تأكل اللحم.

2. Habits - repeated actions → I play every day.

(عادات - أشياء متكررة الحدوث) ألعب كل يوم.

3. Likes → I like cake.

(ما تحب) أحب الكيك.

Pronunciation

- To say the /er/ sound, open your mouth slightly, say "eh," then add the /r/ sound. It's one sound, like in "wear" or "stare".

لنطق صوت /er/، افتح فمك قليلاً، وقل "eh"، ثم أضف صوت /r/. إنه صوت واحد، كما في كلمتي "wear".

Dictation:

tourists	منطقة
smell	فن
Arabic designs	نجارون
cultures	رائع
workers	خشبي
ancient	معتاد - نموذجي
colorful	جميل
topics	الطبيعة
environment	البدو
marine life	قواعد - قوانين
protected area	نظيف
beach	مشهور
wooden boats	ملون
rope	قماش
machine	نسيم
breeze	مشروع
villagers	مسؤوليات
carpets	الصحراء الغربية
crafts	طبيعي
machine	غربي

Writing Skills

Your last visit to the market

Last Saturday, I went to the market with my mom. The market was so busy. We bought many fresh vegetables like carrots and tomatoes. We also got some delicious apples and bananas for snacks. It was fun to help her pick out all the food for the week. We will go back again soon.

The Beauty of the Sea

Our trip to the Hurghada was amazing! we visited many places there. The landscape was beautiful, with huge mountains and green mangrove trees. We could swim and snorkel near the coral reefs. I even saw some big sea turtles while I was there. It was so much fun to dive and explore the underwater world.

Your village

In my village, some people are fishermen. They go out in their wooden boats with fishing nets to catch fish. We also have farmers who grow fruits and harvest crops. They happily harvest the crops every season. Some families feed animals and spin wool to make clothes. My village is a busy and wonderful place.

We have a break to play in the playground and chat in the middle of the day. Before going home we pack our bags and leave the school.

Your friend,
Nader



Search

From : Hady@gmail.com
To : Galal@gmail.com
Subject : My Life as a Fisherman.

Hi Galal,

I wanted to tell you about my life here. As you know, I'm a fisherman in Alexandria. I wake up in the early and go in my wooden boat. I use my fishing nets to catch fish all morning. It's hard work, but I love being on the sea. When my boat needs work, I take the time to repair boats so it's always ready. I hope to sell my fish to one of the fish factories in the city.

Your friend,
Hady



Search

From : Omar@gmail.com
To : Ali@gmail.com
Subject : My visit to Old Cairo!

Hi Ali,

I wanted to tell you about my trip to the local market in Old Cairo. I went to buy souvenirs and found some beautiful things. I got some cool bracelets and a nice necklace. I also saw some ancient lamps and even some old coins! It was amazing to see people bake bread in an old oven. We had a great time and I also managed to take photos and walk to a small museum.

Your friend,
Omar



Search

From : nader@gmail.com
To : ahmed@gmail.com
Subject : My daily routine.

Hi Ahmed,

I wanted to tell you about my daily routine. I wake up early and get dressed. After that, I have breakfast and pack my school bag. When I go to school, we all stand in line to sing the national anthem and salute the flag. Then we take out our books and begin our lessons.



Practice 1 on Unit 1

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Total

60

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

finish - subject - math - begin - sandwich

Maher : What time does your school day ① ?

Tarek : It begins at 7:30. We stand in line and sing the national anthem.

Maher : Wow, that sounds nice. What's your first ② ?

Tarek : Our first subject is usually the ③

Maher : What do you do at the break?

Tarek : I usually eat my ④, play with my friends, and chat with them. It's a fun part of the day.

Maher : What time does your school day ⑤ ?

Tarek : It finishes at 2:30. pm.

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. fish - dolphin - bird - whale

2. run - jump - ate - swim

3. kitchen - bathroom - living room - school

4. shirt - subject - sweater - shoe

5. table - chair - sofa - floor

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. My sister (**make** - **makes** - **making**) beautiful bracelets.

2. The farmers (**harvest** - **harvests** - **harvesting**) the corn in the summer.

3. We usually (**go** - **goes** - **going**) to the market on weekends.

4. My grandmother (**spin** - **spinning** - **spins**) wool to make blankets.

5. What time (do - does - did) your brother get up?
6. The workers use a (loom - basket - oven) to weave rugs.
7. A fisherman uses a (bicycle - hammer - net) to catch fish.
8. It is important to keep our village clean and (safe - sad - angry).
9. He doesn't (talk - talks - talking) about his day at school.
10. The teacher (help - helps - helping) us with our homework.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Khaled. I live in a small village and help my family. Every morning, I water the plants in our garden. I love to watch them grow. At school, my favorite subject is science because we learn about animals and nature. After school, I play with my friends. We usually ride our bikes or play football in the village square.

A Answer the following questions:

1. What does Khaled do every morning?

▶

2. Why does Khaled love science?

▶

3. Where do Khaled and his friends ride bikes?

▶

B Choose the correct answer:

4. The general idea of the text is about (city life - village life - the beach).
5. Khaled's favorite subject is (math - science - art).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. a - watch - movie - family - my - I - with.

▶

2. their - in - **People** - market - sell - crafts - the.



3. get - up - early - he - does - **Why**?



?

4. they - every - fishing - go - **Do** - day?



?

5. eat - **We** - break - a sandwich - during - the.



6 Write a paragraph of 5 sentences using the following guiding elements:

"A day in a village"



► **farmers - harvest - wheat - family - help**

Handwriting practice area with 10 horizontal lines for writing a paragraph.

Practice 2 on Unit 1



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. The school day begins at (7:00 - 7:15 - 7:30 - 8:00).
2. Our first subject is usually (Arabic - English - science - math).
3. Some topics are a bit (tiny - hard - easy - tricky).
4. The students usually during the short break. (read a book and study - play with friends - take a nap - go to the library)

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. The smell of fresh (bread - necklace - culture - souvenirs) was so strong at the market.
2. Osama stopped to look at shiny coins and a (photo - toy - handmade - skirt) necklace.
3. People can see (orange - mangrove - plastic - empty) trees and colorful fish in the water.
4. We (dive - diving - dives - to dive) in the water every morning.
5. (Does - Are - Do - Were) you like snorkeling in Ras Mohamed?

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

culture - turtles - amazing - park - snorkel

Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in Sinai region. It's known for its ① coral reefs and diverse marine life. Visitors from around the world go there to swim, ②, and dive. It's a protected area with many animals, like sea ③ and dolphins, and beautiful landscapes. Following the rules helps keep the park safe and clean, and people can learn about nature and the local Bedouin ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Maged and his family have a fantastic day in Cairo, visiting the famous Khan El Khalili. They enjoy many exciting activities in the old streets. They buy souvenirs like necklaces and bracelets, and they watch people baking bread and making furniture by hand. They also take pictures of the beautiful Arabic buildings. Later, they visit a small museum to see old Egyptian coins and clothes, learning about history. It is a wonderful day full of new experiences.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. They buy souvenirs like (bag - lamp - bread - necklace) and bracelets.
2. The family sees old coins, clothes, and tools in a small (museum - bakery - market - shop).

B Answer the following questions:

3. What places does Maged visit with his family?

▶

4. What do they watch people doing in the shops?

▶

5. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. and - week - his - Adam - visited - family - last - Khan El Khalili.

▶

2. Arabic - like - subjects - have - We - math - and.

▶

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The three friends were always looking for ways to help. ()
2. The teacher did not like the friends' idea. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main problem in the story? 
4. How did Noor feel when she saw the dripping tap? 

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. My friend (watch) a movie every weekend.
2. They (not go) to the market on Fridays.

8 Punctuate the following sentence

1. First they buy souvenirs from aswan.



2. They eat rice, bread and vegetables



9 Write an email of 50 words to your English friend Jack:

Write an email to your friend Jack telling him about your daily routine at school. Your mail is heba@gmail.com, and your friend's email is jack@gmail.com: start- after the break-at the end

...

📍 ⭐ 📎 A 🗑

From

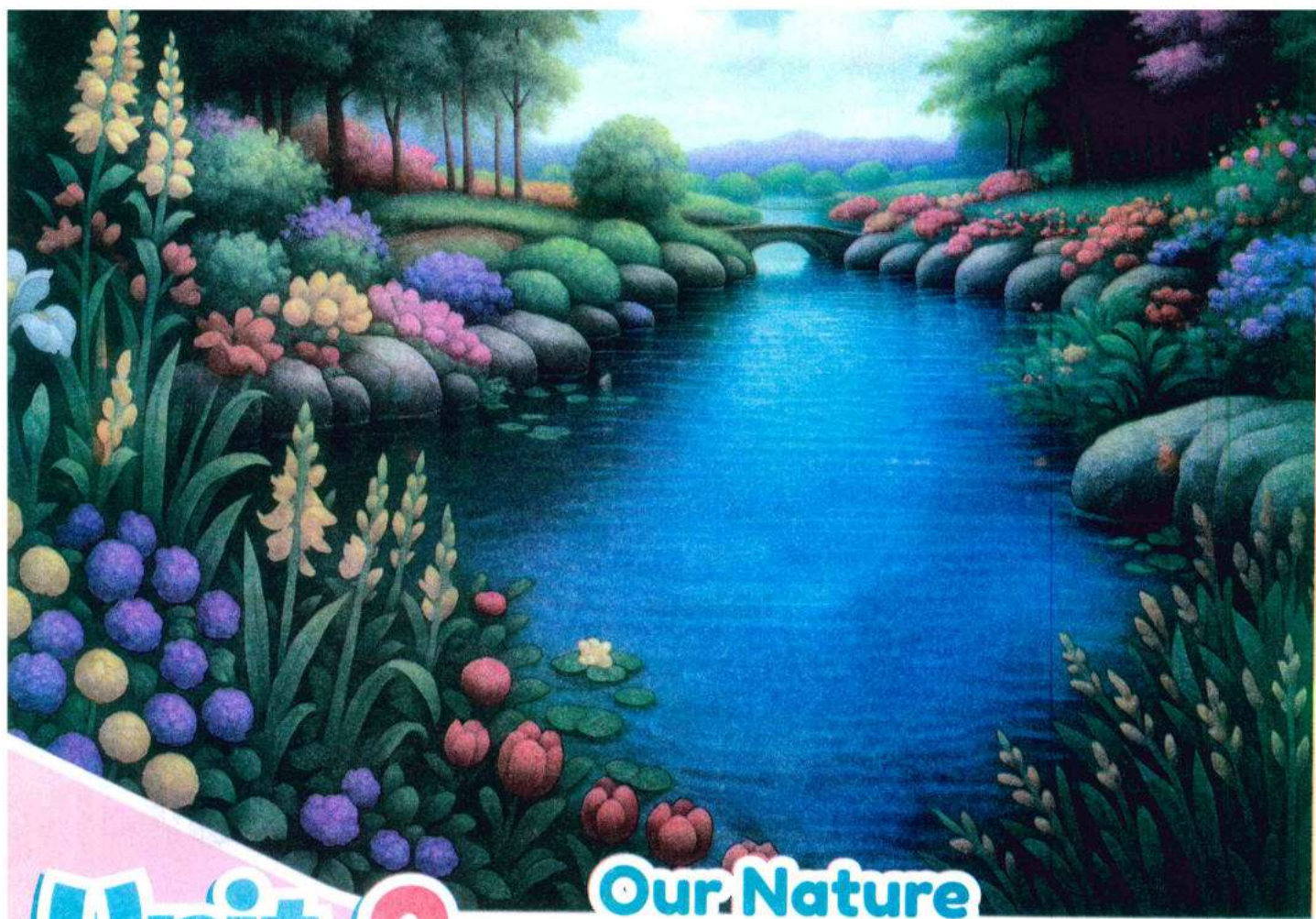
:

To

:

Subject

:



Unit 2

Our Nature طبيعتنا

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Talk about how to grow a plant step by step.
- Describe the weather in different places.
- Identify and accurately pronounce the phonemes /e/ and /ɪ/.

Listening

- Listen to short texts to identify the main idea.
- Identify the specific details in a listening text.

Reading

- Answer comprehension questions about plants, weather, and animal habitats in Egypt
- Identify main ideas in a text
- Identify supporting details

Writing

- Write sentences using the present continuous tense.
- Write a short narrative story or report about an experience or trip.

Lesson 1

Caring for Plants

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



basil

ريحان



hibiscus

كر كديه



mint tea

شاي نعناع



jasmine

ياسمين



parsley

بقدونس



olive

زيتون



natural fertilizer

سماد طبيعي



weeds

أعشاب ضارة



insects

حشرات



pull out (v.)

يشد - يسحب



water (v.)

يروي



plant (v.)

يزرع

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

care (n.)	رعاية	herbs	أعشاب
environment	بيئة	incredible	لا يُصدق
flavor	نكهة	sage	مريمية (نبات عطري)
ginger	زنجبيل	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
harmful	ضار	tasty	لذيذ
environment	صحي	thyme	زعتر

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

good for health	مفيد للصحة	Keep it so green.	حافظ عليه أخضر هكذا
It smells amazing.	رائحته مذهشة	many years ago	منذ سنوات عديدة
It smells lovely.	رائحته جميلة	take care of	يعتني بـ
It sounds like hard work.	يبدو كعمل شاق	That's cool.	هذا رائع
It tastes good.	طعمه لذيذ	They still do.	ما زالوا يفعلون

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.p.
care for	يهتم بـ	cared for	cared for
check	يفحص	checked	checked
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	relaxed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.p.
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
take care of	يعتني بـ	took care of	taken care of



Read and learn



Laila and her grandpa are talking about the plants in his garden.

ليلى وجدّها يتحدّثان عن النباتات في حديقته:



Laila : Grandpa, your garden looks incredible! How do you keep it so green and healthy?
ليلى : جدي، حديقتك تبدو رائعة! كيف تحافظ عليها خضراء وصحية؟

Grandpa : Thank you, Laila. I take care of it every day. Plants need water, sunlight, and care to grow well.

الجد : شكرًا يا ليلى. إنني أعتني بها كلّ يوم. فالنباتات تحتاج إلى ماء وضوء الشمس وعناية لكي تنمو جيدًا.

Laila : What kinds of plants do you have here?

ليلى : ما أنواع النباتات التي تزرعها هنا؟

Grandpa : I grow herbs like basil, mint, and parsley. We use them in many Egyptian dishes. Some add flavor, and others are good for health.

الجد : أزرع أعشابًا مثل الرّيحان والنّعناع والبقدونس. فنحن نستخدمها في كثيرٍ من الأطباق المصرية. فبعضها يُضيف نكهة للطعام، وبعضها مفيد للصحة.

Laila : Oh, Dad drinks mint tea every evening on the balcony. It helps him relax.

ليلى : اوه، والدي يشرب شاي النعناع كل مساء في الشرفة. إنّه يُساعده على الاسترخاء.

Grandpa : Yes, it tastes good. I also grow hibiscus and jasmine. They smell lovely, and we use hibiscus to make a tasty drink.

الجد : نعم، طعمه لذيذ. أزرع أيضًا الكركديه والياسمين. رائحتهما جميلة، ونستخدم الكركديه لصنع مشروب لذيذ.

Laila : Mom makes hibiscus tea all the time! And jasmine smells amazing at night.

ليلى : أمي تُحضّر شاي الكركديه طوال الوقت! ورائحة الياسمين رائعة ليلاً.

Grandpa : I have guava and fig trees, too. Their fruit is sweet and healthy. Over there are the olive trees.

الجد : لديّ أيضًا أشجار الجوافة والتين، فثمارها حلوة ومفيدة. وهناك أشجار الزيتون.

Laila : Wow! Do Egyptians really grow olives?

ليلى : واو! هل يُزرع الزيتون في مصر فعلاً؟

Grandpa : Yes. Olives take time to grow, but they are full of oil. People grew olive trees in Egypt many years ago—and they still do.

الجد : نعم. الزيتون يحتاج وقتًا لينمو، لكنه غنيّ بالزيت. لقد زرع الناس الزيتون في مصر منذ قديم الزمان، وما زالوا يفعلون.

Laila : That's cool! How do you care for all these plants?

ليلى : رائع! كيف تعتني بكل هذه النباتات؟

Grandpa : I water them early in the morning, pull out weeds, and check for insects. Sometimes I use natural fertilizer.

الجد : أرويها في الصباح الباكر، وأنزع الأعشاب الضارة، وأفحصها بحثًا عن الحشرات. وأحيانًا أستخدم سمادًا طبيعيًا.

Laila : It sounds like hard work.

ليلى : يبدو أن الأمر مُتعب!

Choose the correct answer:



Student's Book

1. What does Laila say about her grandpa's garden?

a) It looks small.

b) It smells bad.

c) It looks incredible.

d) It needs water.

2. What do plants need to grow well, according to Grandpa?
 - a) Shade and wind
 - b) Water, sunlight, and care
 - c) Rain and insects
 - d) Soil and flowers
3. What kind of herbs does Grandpa grow?
 - a) Thyme, mint, and sage
 - b) Parsley, mint, and basil
 - c) Lavender, ginger, and mint
 - d) Basil, rose, and thyme
4. What does Laila's dad drink in the evening?
 - a) Jasmine tea
 - b) Guava juice
 - c) Mint tea
 - d) Hibiscus juice
5. What is hibiscus used for in the family?
 - a) As decoration only
 - b) To make a tasty drink
 - c) To feed animals
 - d) As a fertilizer

Exercises

on

Lesson

1

1

Choose the correct answer:

1. are harmful plants that farmers remove from the garden.
 - a) Herbs
 - b) Weeds
 - c) Flowers
 - d) Fruits
2. Hibiscus is used to make a drink that many people enjoy.
 - a) tasty
 - b) hard
 - c) full
 - d) soil
3. Basil and mint are types of used in cooking.
 - a) herbs
 - b) fruits
 - c) animals
 - d) insects
4. Using natural fertilizer helps keep the healthy and full of nutrients.
 - a) oil
 - b) soil
 - c) water
 - d) shade
5. I want to sleep to and feel calm.
 - a) cook
 - b) grow
 - c) decorate
 - d) relax
6. Farmers need to water plants so they can well.
 - a) smell
 - b) fall
 - c) grow
 - d) food

7. Plants need water, sunlight, and to grow well.
 a) decoration b) care c) oil d) flowers
8. Jasmine flowers so nice at night.
 a) see b) care c) water d) smell

2 Read and complete using the words in the box:



oil - grow - herbs - water

1. Since ancient times, people used olives to make
2. My brother and I have a plant. We it every day.
3. In Egypt, people use like basil in cooking.
4. Farmers fruits like guavas and figs.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

weeds - mint - pulls - garden - sunlight

Grandpa has a beautiful garden full of healthy plants. He grows special herbs like basil and ① He also grows fresh rosemary. He believes that plants need water and ② Every day, Grandpa shows his love for his plants. He gives them a lot of care. If he sees ③, he quickly ④ them out.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Laila has a small garden next to her house. She loves growing herbs like basil and mint. Every morning, she waters her plants and makes sure they get enough sunlight. She also uses **natural fertilizer** to help them grow strong and healthy. Sometimes, weeds grow among her plants. Laila knows that weeds can harm her herbs, so she always pulls them out. Her mother helps her check the garden and take care of it. In the afternoon, they sit in the shade and drink mint tea together. Laila feels proud of her beautiful garden.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Laila waters her plants every
 a) week b) hour c) morning d) night
2. The underlined word "natural fertilizer" means
 a) a type of plant b) a tool of gardening
 c) a natural material that helps plants grow d) a kind of flower

B Answer the following questions:

3. What herbs does Laila grow in her garden? ►
4. How does Laila feel about her garden? ►
5. Give a suitable title to the text. ►

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. basil - and - mint - grows - **My** - uncle. ►
2. waters - every - the - day - plants - **She**. ►
3. in - Egypt - **People** - use - herbs - in - cooking. ►
4. like - guavas - and - figs - **Farmers** - grow - fruits. ►
5. harmful - **Weeds** - be - can - the - to - plants. ►
6. grow - to - well - need - **What** - do - plants? ►?

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. laila sits with her grandpa every afternoon ►
2. does he pull out the weeds ►

7 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your garden"

► **sunlight - herbs**

►

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 2

How's The Weather In Your City?



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



weather

طقس



windy

عاصف



rainy

ممطر



wet

مبتل



cold

بارد



dark clouds

سحب سوداء



hot

حار



sunny

مشمس



warm

دافئ



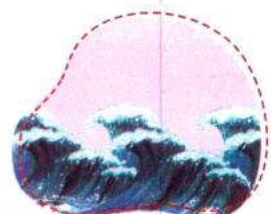
shade

ظل



clear sky

سماء صافية



waves

امواج

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

clear	صافي	high	عالٍ - مرتفع
dark	مظلم	indoors	بالداخل
different	مختلف	outdoors	في الخارج - في الهواء الطلق
dusty	مغبر - مليء بالأتربة	strong	قوي

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

from one place to another	من مكان إلى آخر	What is the weather like?	ما هي حالة الطقس؟
go outdoors	يذهب إلى الخارج	stay indoors	يبقى في الداخل
It is raining heavily.	إنها تمطر بغزارة.	Write back soon.	اكتب لي قريبًا
according to	وفقًا لـ	in the shade	في الظل
different from	مختلف عن	in the streets	في الشوارع
full of	مليء بـ	lots of water	الكثير من الماء
in the morning	في الصباح	protect from	يحمي من

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		PP	
close	يغلق	closed		closed	
protect	يحمي	protected		protected	
rest	يستريح	rested		rested	
stay	يبقى	stayed		stayed	
walk	يمشي	walked		walked	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
see	يرى	saw	seen
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn



Read and learn

What is the weather like in Egypt today?



New message



Search

To : john@yahoo.com
From : youssef@gmail.com
Subject : Weather in Egypt

Hi John,

How are you?

I want to tell you about the weather in Egypt today. It is very different from one place to another.

In Alexandria, it's windy and rainy. The sky is full of dark clouds and the waves are high. People are staying indoors because it's cold and the streets are wet. Some shops are closing early.

In Cairo, the weather is warm and sunny. People are walking in the streets. Children are playing in the parks. Some students are doing their homework outdoors. I can see birds flying in the clear sky.

In Aswan, it is hot. The sun is very strong, and the sky is clear. Farmers water their plants early in the morning. People drink lots of water, wear hats and sunglasses, and sit in the shade to protect themselves from the sun.

Now, Egyptians are checking the weather to help people take care of their homes and plants.

What is the weather like in your city? Write back soon.

Your friend,

Youssef



Search

إلى: john@yahoo.com

من: youssef@gmail.com

موضوع الرسالة : الطقس في مصر.

مرحبًا جون،

كيف حالك؟ أريد أن أخبرك عن الطقس في مصر اليوم. إنه يختلف كثيرًا من مكان إلى آخر. في الإسكندرية، الجو عاصف وممطر. السماء مليئة بالغيوم الداكنة والأمواج عالية. الناس يبقون في الداخل لأن الجو بارد والشوارع مبللة. بعض المتاجر تغلق مبكرًا.

في القاهرة، الطقس دافئ ومشمس. الناس يمشون في الشوارع. الأطفال يلعبون في الحدائق. بعض الطلاب يؤدون واجباتهم المدرسية في الهواء الطلق. أستطيع أن أرى الطيور تطير في السماء الصافية.

في أسوان، الجو حار. الشمس قوية جدًا، والسماء صافية. يسقي الفلاحون نباتاتهم في الصباح الباكر. الناس يشربون الكثير من الماء، ويرتدون القبعات والنظارات الشمسية، ويجلسون في الظل لحماية أنفسهم من الشمس.

الآن، المصريون يتابعون حالة الطقس لمساعدة الناس على العناية بمنزلهم ونباتاتهم.

ما حالة الطقس في مدينتك؟

اكتب لي قريبًا.

صديقك،

يوسف

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's Book

1. The weather is rainy and windy in Cairo. ()

2. It's cold and the sky is dark in Aswan. ()

3. The streets are wet in Alexandria. ()

Language in use

Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر



Study this example situation:

Examples:

- ▶ Ahmed is on his way to school.
- ▶ He **is walking** to school.
- ▶ He is walking **now**.



- We use the Present Continuous to talk about actions happening now.

نستخدم زمن **المضارع المستمر** للحديث عن الأفعال التي تحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

Affirmative Sentences الجمل المثبتة

(am-is-are) + -ing is the present continuous

Examples:

- ▶ I'm watching a funny movie now.
- ▶ Look! The cats are eating.
- ▶ Listen! She's singing.

- You can use the present continuous with today / this week / this year etc.

يمكنك استخدام المضارع المستمر مع "اليوم" / "هذا الأسبوع" / "هذه السنة" إلخ.

Examples:

- ▶ They are studying well this year.
- ▶ It's raining heavily today.



-ing spelling rules

- Delete the final "e" before adding -ing.

احذف حرف "e" الأخير قبل إضافة "-ing".

Examples:

▶ bake ➔ baking.
▶ drive ➔ driving.

▶ take ➔ taking.
▶ ride ➔ riding.

- Double the last consonant if the verb ends in consonant + vowel + consonant.

ضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا انتهى الفعل بـ: حرف ساكن + حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن.

Examples:

▶ run ➔ running.
▶ stop ➔ stopping.

▶ shop ➔ shopping.
▶ swim ➔ swimming.

- Change "ie" into "y".

● غيّر "ie" إلى "y" قبل إضافة "-ing".

Examples:

▶ die ➔ dying.

▶ lie ➔ lying.

▶ tie ➔ tying.

Negative Sentences الجمل المنفية

(am-is-are) + **not** + verb + ing

Examples:

- ▶ I am **not** watching TV now.
▶ He is **not** studying today.
▶ They **are** not playing outside.

Questions تكوين الأسئلة

- For questions, use **Am/Is/Are** + the subject + **-ing**.

للسؤال بـ "هل"، استخدم **Am/Is/Are** + الفاعل + الفعل المضاف إليه **-ing**.

4. Some people like to check the before they go outdoors to know if it's hot or cold SB
 a) shops b) beach c) plants d) weather
5. The weather is warm and People are walking in the streets.
 a) wet b) windy c) sunny d) stormy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar):

1. The children in the park now.
 a) plays b) play c) are playing d) played
2. I to my friend on the phone at the moment.
 a) talk b) am talking c) talks d) talking
3. She her homework at the moment.
 a) does b) doing c) is doing d) do
4. They lunch together right now.
 a) eat b) eating c) is eating d) are eating
5. My brother TV in his room.
 a) is watching b) watches c) watch d) watched
6. Listen! she a story to her little sister.
 a) read b) reads c) is reading d) reading
7. I my room because it's messy.
 a) am cleaning b) clean c) cleaned d) are cleaning

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

It's a sunny afternoon in the city. The temperature is rising quickly, and the sun is shining brightly. Many people are watching the weather updates on their phones before going out. Some families are sitting together in the gardens, enjoying the warm breeze. The trees are moving gently, and the birds are flying in the clear sky. To protect themselves, people are wearing sunglasses and hats. The parks are full of life as families sit in the shade, talking and relaxing. Everyone seems happy and calm, enjoying the peaceful weather.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The weather in the city is
 a) rainy and cold b) sunny and warm
 c) cloudy and windy d) foggy and cold
- The underlined word "peaceful" means
 a) noisy b) busy c) calm d) strong

B Answer the following questions:

- What are people doing to protect themselves from the sun?
 ►
- How are families spending their time in the parks?
 ►
- Summarize the text in two sentences.
 ►

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Maged(play) tennis in the club now.
- you (eat) your lunch at the moment?
- I (not wear) my jacket today. It's hot.
- My friend and I (visit) London now.
- Kareem (write) a message now.
- They (not walk) because it's raining.
- We (visit) Luxor this week.



5 Form a Wh- question for the underlined part of each sentence:

- I am eating eggs and bread for breakfast now.
 ► ?
- She is going to school at 7:00 a.m.
 ► ?
- They are living in a small apartment this month.
 ► ?

4. He is studying science at university this semester.



?

5. We are playing in the garden.



?

6. The children are playing in the park.



?

7. He is drinking milk now.



?

8. The shop is selling new shirts today.



?

9. I am meeting my friends at the café.



?

10. She is teaching English this year.



?

6

Punctuate the following sentences:

1. the sky is full of clouds



2. are people staying indoors because it s cold?



7

Write an email of (50) words to your friend Sami:

Write an email to your friend telling him about the weather in Egypt. Your name is Wael and your email is wael@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Sami and his email is sami@gmail.com.

...		📍	☆	📎	✍️	🗑️	⌵
From	:						
To	:						
Subject	:						

Lesson 3

The Wonderful Nile River

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



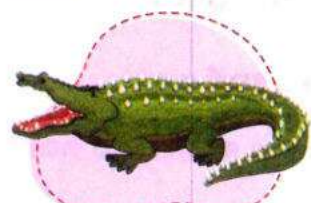
tilapia

سمك البلطي



Nile perch

فرخ النيل (سمك الإمبراطور)



crocodile

تمساح



kingfisher

طائر الرفراف



heron

طائر البيلشون (مالك الحزين)

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

dangerous

خطير

special

خاص - مميز

desert

صحراء

temple

معبد

important

هام - مهم

wheat

قمح

soil

تربة

wonderful

رائع

Directions

الاتجاهات

east

شرق

south

جنوب

north

شمال

west

غرب

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

enjoy the breeze	يستمتعون بالنسيم	shine brightly	يسطع بشدة
move gently	يتحرك بلطف	sit together	يجلسون معًا
depend on	يعتمد على	travel in boats	يسافرون بالقوارب
from south to north	من الجنوب إلى الشمال	flows through Egypt	يمر عبر مصر
in the world	في العالم		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
depend	يعتمد	depended	depended
flood	يفيض	flooded	flooded
flow	يتدفق	flowed	flowed
provide	يمد - يوفر	provided	provided
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
bring	يجلب	brought	brought
build	يبني	built	built
come	يأتي	came	come
find	يجد	found	found
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
swim	يسبح	swam	swum



Read and learn



The Wonderful Nile River



The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is about 6,650 kilometers long. The Nile **flows** through Egypt from south to north. It goes through the desert and brings life to the country.

نهر النيل هو أطول نهر في العالم. يبلغ طوله حوالي 6,650 كيلومترًا. يمر النيل عبر مصر من الجنوب إلى الشمال. يمر عبر الصحراء ويجلب الحياة إلى البلاد.

Many animals live in and near the Nile. Big fish like Nile perch and **tilapia** swim in the water. **Crocodiles** live in the river, too. They are dangerous animals. Many birds come to the river to drink and find food. You can see **kingfishers**, herons, and ducks near the Nile.

تعيش العديد من الحيوانات في نهر النيل وبالقرب منه تسبح في الماء أسماك كبيرة مثل سمك الفرخ النيل والبلطي. تعيش التماسيح أيضًا في النهر، وهي حيوانات خطيرة. تأتي العديد من الطيور إلى النهر لتشرب وتبحث عن الطعام. يمكنك أن ترى طيور الرفراف، والبلشون، والبط بالقرب من نهر النيل.

The Nile is very important for Egyptian people. In the past, the river **flooded** and brought good soil. Farmers used this soil to grow food like wheat and vegetables. The Nile provides people and animals with water to drink. People also use the river to travel in boats.

يُعد نهر النيل مهمًا جدًا للشعب المصري. ففي الماضي، كان النهر يفيض ويجلب تربة جيدة. استخدم الفلاحون هذه التربة لزراعة الطعام مثل القمح والخضروات و يوفر النيل الماء للناس والحيوانات للشرب. كما يستخدم الناس النهر أيضًا للتنقل بالقوارب.

The Ancient Egyptians thought the Nile was special. They built temples near the river. Today, many people still depend on the Nile for their jobs and food.

كان المصريون القدماء يعتقدون أن نهر النيل مميز. فبنّوا المعابد بالقرب من النهر. واليوم، لا يزال الكثير من الناس يعتمدون على النيل في أعمالهم وطعامهم.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



1. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
2. The Nile flows from north to east.
3. Crocodiles live in the Nile.
4. The Nile never flooded in the past.
5. Ancient Egyptians built temples near the river.

()
()
()
()
()

Answer the following questions:



1. How long is the Nile River?
2. Name two fish that live in the Nile.
3. Why is the Nile important for farmers?
4. Which bird can you see near the Nile?

.....
.....
.....
.....

Pronunciation



- Short vowel sounds are the quick and simple sounds that vowels make.
أصوات الحروف المتحركة القصيرة هي الأصوات السريعة والبسيطة التي تصدرها الحروف المتحركة.
- Pronounce the short /e/ sound by opening your mouth slightly and keeping your tongue low-mid and front.
انطق الصوت القصير /e/ بفتح فمك قليلاً، وابقِ لسانك في وضع منخفض - متوسط وفي مقدمة الفم.
- ▶ "e n", "he n", and "be d".
- Pronounce the short /ɪ/ sound by keeping your tongue high but slightly lower than for /e/, with relaxed lips and jaw.
انطق الصوت القصير /ɪ/ من خلال إبقاء لسانك مرتفعاً، ولكن أقل قليلاً من موضع /e/، مع إرخاء الشفاه والفك.

▶ "sɪ t", "bɪ t", and "ɪ n".

e /e/		i /i/	
red	أحمر	sit	يجلس
bed	سرير	bit	قطعة صغيرة
hen	دجاجة	in	في
ten	عشرة	milk	حليب
desk	مكتب	village	قرية
shelf	رفّ	fish	سمك

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer:

- The Nile is the river in the world.
a) shortest b) deepest c) longest d) smallest
- The Nile flows Egypt.
a) around b) through c) above d) under
- Many animals live the Nile.
a) over b) far c) near d) behind
- Crocodiles live in the river and they are animals.
a) dangerous b) small c) kind d) quiet
- Birds come to the river, to drink and food.
a) cook b) hide c) sell d) find
- The Nile provides water to people and
a) books b) roads c) animals d) boats
- Farmers used the soil to grow and vegetables.
a) fish b) meat c) birds d) wheat
- People use boats to in the Nile.
a) travel b) sleep c) swim d) dig

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

river - crocodiles - temples - life - food

The Nile is a very long river that flows through Egypt. It brings
 ① to the desert. Many fish live in and near the Nile. People
 use the water to drink and grow ② like wheat and vegetables.
 Big ③ swim in the river, and birds come to find food. In the
 past, the Egyptians built ④ near the Nile.

3

Circle the word that has a different short vowel sound:

1. ten - bed - sit - red
2. fish - in - milk - fence
3. clever - desk - shelf - village
4. pin - is - bit - set
5. window - hen - red - ten

4

Fill the blanks with the words in the box:

**temples - Crocodiles - flooded - Nile - food**

1. The is very important for our lives.
2. live in the Nile, and they are very dangerous.
3. Farmers grow like wheat and vegetables.
4. The river every year and brought good soil.
5. In the past, Ancient Egyptians built near the river.

5

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. through - flows - The - Egypt - Nile - the - from - south.



2. in - live - Crocodiles - River - the - Nile.



3. food - to - come - **Birds** - find - some.

4. boats - in - travel - Nile - on - the - **People**.

5. grow - vegetables - wheat - **Farmers** - there - and.

6 Punctuate the sentences:

1. the nile is the longest river in the world.

2. which bird can you see near the river

7 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Life around the Nile"

- ▶ Why is the Nile River important to people and animals?
- ▶ How do people use the Nile in their daily lives?

Handwriting practice area with 10 horizontal lines for writing a paragraph.

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



waterfall

شلال



fossils

حفريات



sand dunes

كثبان رملية



exhibit

معرض



skeleton

هيكل عظمي



lake

بحيرة



guide

مرشد سياحي



history

تاريخ

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

bench	مقعد	palm trees	أشجار نخيل
bones	عظام	scientist	عالم
distance	مسافة / بعد	trip	رحلة
museum	متحف	whale	حوت

Places

أماكن

National Park

محمية طبيعية

Wadi El-Hitan

(Valley of the Whales)

وادي الحيتان

a fossil museum

متحف حفريات

green farms

مزارع خضراء

Adjectives

صفات

ancient	قديم	real	حقيقي
kind	لطيف	tucked	مختبئة
national	وطني	unforgettable	لا يُنسى
rare	نادر	wooden	خشبي

Expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

looked everywhere	بحثت في كل مكان	with no luck	دون جدوى - بلا فائدة
just before we left	قبل أن نغادر مباشرة	took another short trip	قمنا برحلة قصيرة أخرى
thankfully	لحسن الحظ	in Fayoum	في الفيوم
under a wooden bench	تحت مقعد خشبي	outside the exhibit	خارج المعرض
with my camera	بكاميرتي	on the way	في الطريق
for two hours	لمدة ساعتين	in the sand	في الرمال

Definitions تعريفات

waterfall	a place where water flows over the edge of a cliff or rock
sand dunes	hills of sand formed by the wind, usually found in deserts
rare	not common; found only in small numbers
skeleton	the structure of bones that supports a human or animal body
tucked	placed in a safe or hidden position
exhibit	a part of a museum where important or interesting things are shown

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.p.
organize	يُنظِّم	organized	organized
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
call	يُسمي	called	called
cover	يُغطِّي	covered	covered
realize	يُدرك	realized	realized
look	ينظر	looked	looked
thank	يشكر	thanked	thanked
tuck	يُخبِئ - يُدس	tucked	tucked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.p.
leave	يغادر	left	left
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
show	يُري - يُظهر	showed	shown
take	يأخذ - يلتقط (صورة)	took	taken

Read and learn



Last Thursday, our school organized a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum. Our class teacher, Miss Salma, and science teacher, Mr. Ahmed, came with us. We left school early and rode the bus for two hours.

نظمت مدرستنا الخميس الماضي رحلة إلى محمية وادي الريان في الفيوم. وقد جاءت معنا مُدرسة الفصل، الأستاذة سلمي، ومُعلم العلوم، الأستاذ أحمد. غادرنا المدرسة مبكرًا وركبنا الحافلة لمدة ساعتين.



On the way, we saw green farms, sand dunes, and camels walking in the distance. When we arrived, a kind guide named Mr. Tarek showed us the lakes, the waterfalls, and the palm trees. He explained that Wadi El Rayan is not only beautiful, but it also protects rare animals and plants.

في الطريق، رأينا مزارع خضراء، وكتباناً رملية، وجمالاً تمشي على بعد و عندما وصلنا، أرشدنا مرشد سياحي لطيف يُدعى الاستاذ / طارق، إلى البحيرات، والشلالات، وأشجار النخيل. وقد أوضح أن وادي الريان ليس جميلاً فقط، بل إنه أيضاً يحمي الحيوانات والنباتات النادرة.

After lunch, we took another short trip into the desert—to a place called Wadi El-Hitan, or Valley of the Whales. This place was covered by the sea. Scientists found the skeletons of ancient whales there. We saw real whale bones in the sand and even a fossil museum!

بعد الغداء، قمنا برحلة قصيرة أخرى إلى الصحراء، إلى مكان يُسمى وادي الحيتان. هذا المكان كان مغطى بالبحر في الماضي و اكتشف العلماء هياكل عظمية لحيتان قديمة هناك. كما رأينا عظام حيتان حقيقية في الرمال، و أيضاً متحفاً للحفريات.

I wanted to take a picture of the skeletons with my camera when I realized that it wasn't with me. I looked everywhere with no luck. Thankfully, Mr. Ahmed found it tucked under a wooden bench outside the exhibit just before we left that area.

أردت أن ألتقط صورة للهيكل العظمي بكاميرتي عندما أدركت أنها ليست معي. بحثت في كل مكان دون جدوى. لحسن الحظ، وجدها الأستاذ أحمد مخبأة تحت مقعد خشبي خارج المعرض قبل مغادرتنا لتلك المنطقة بقليل.

That trip was full of nature, history, and fun with friends.

كانت تلك الرحلة مليئة بالطبيعة، والتاريخ، والمرح مع الأصدقاء.

Read and answer:



1. Where did the students go on their school trip?

▶

2. What animals did the students see near the lake?

▶

Think and answer:

1. Have you ever been on a school trip? What did you do?



- **Skimming a text means reading quickly to get the main idea. Focus on the most important parts to understand what the text is mostly about.**

القراءة السريعة تعني قراءة النص بسرعة للحصول على الفكرة الرئيسية. ركز على الأجزاء الأكثر أهمية لفهم ما يدور حوله النص بشكل عام.



- **Here are some steps for writing a story:**

إليك بعض الخطوات لكتابة قصة:

- Tell when and where the story takes place.

اذكر متى وأين تدور أحداث القصة.

- Say who is in the story (people, animals, etc.).

حدد من هم في القصة (أشخاص، حيوانات، إلخ).

- Write what happens using (first, next, and finally).

اكتب ما يحدث باستخدام (أولاً، ثم، وأخيراً).

- Include a problem and a solution.

قم بتضمين مشكلة وحل لها.

- Use past simple tense.

استخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

- Add interesting details.

أضف تفاصيل ممتعة.

- Finish with a suitable ending.

اختتم بنهاية مناسبة.

Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Wadi El Rayan protects
 - a) old buildings
 - b) boats
 - c) rare animals and plants
 - d) farms
2. Wadi El-Hitan is also called
 - a) Valley of the Whales
 - b) Valley of the Lions
 - c) Valley of the Trees
 - d) Valley of the Sand
3. I saw whale bones in the
 - a) club
 - b) house
 - c) school
 - d) fossil museum
4. When you visit Fayoum, you can see waterfalls, lakes, and
 - a) buses
 - b) palm trees
 - c) cities
 - d) bags
5. The fossil museum is located in
 - a) Wadi El Rayan
 - b) Fayoum city
 - c) Wadi El-Hitan
 - d) The school

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

waterfalls - ancient - celebrate - trip - history

Last Thursday, our class went on a school ① to Wadi El Rayan in Fayoum. We saw lakes, ②, and desert animals. Later, we visited Wadi El-Hitan, the Valley of the Whales, and saw ③ whale skeletons in the sand. I was surprised to know that whales once lived there! The trip was full of learning and fun and ④

3

Read the text and answer the questions:

Wadi El Rayan is a beautiful place in the desert of Fayoum. It has big lakes, waterfalls, and sand dunes. Many people visit it to enjoy nature and see the rare animals and birds. Near Wadi El Rayan, there is another place called Wadi El-Hitan. It is also called the Valley of the Whales. A long time ago, this place was under the sea. Scientists found whale bones in the sand. There is also a fossil museum where visitors can learn more about the whales and other animals that lived there long ago.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The text is about ".....".
 a) The weather in Fayoum b) A trip to the city
 c) A special place in the desert d) How to find water
- The underlined word "whale bones" means
 a) palm trees b) whale teeth c) whale skeletons d) rocks

B

Answer the following questions:

- Where is Wadi El Rayan? ►
- What can people see in Wadi El Rayan? ►
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ►

4

Write a short story of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Visiting a new place"

- What are the main characters in the story?
- When and where does the story take place?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 2

Main Vocabulary

basil	ريحان	weather	طقس
crocodile	تمساح	wet	مبتل
dark clouds	سحب سوداء	windy	عاصف
exhibit	معرض	natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعي
fossils	حفريات	weeds	أعشاب ضارة
guide	مرشد سياحي	insects	حشرات
heron	طائر البيلشون / مالك الحز	pull out	يشد - يسحب
hibiscus	كركديه	water	يروي النبات
history	تاريخ	plant	يزرع
jasmine	ياسمين	waves	أمواج
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف	shade	ظل
lake	بحيرة	palm trees	أشجار نخيل
mint tea	شاي نعناع	bench	مقعد
Nile perch	فرخ النيل / سمك الإمبراطور	whale	حوت
olive	زيتون	distance	مسافة - بُعد
parsley	بقدونس	national park	محمية طبيعية
rainy	ممطر	fossil museum	متحف حفريات
sand dunes	كثبان رملية	green farms	مزارع خضراء
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	tucked	مختبئة
tilapia	سمك البلطي		
waterfall	شلال مياه		

Language In Use



Study this example situation:

Examples:

- ▶ Ahmed is on his way to school.
- ▶ He **is walking** to school.
- ▶ He is walking **now**.



● We use the Present Continuous to talk about actions happening now.

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للحديث عن الأفعال التي تحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).



Dictation:

care	أعشاب
environment	لا يصدّق
flavor	مريمية
ginger	ضوء الشمس
harmful	لذيذ
healthy	زعر
olive	صافي
rainy	بالداخل
skeleton	في الخارج
waterfall	خطير
wet	خاص - مميز
desert	معبد
important	قمح
soil	رائع
bones	وطني - قومي
trip	عالٍ - مُرتفع
real	قوي
rare	مغرب - مليء بالآثرية
unforgettable	هذا رائع
kind	يسترخي

Writing Skills

Your garden

I care for my garden, a beautiful environment with lots of herbs. The sunlight helps my plants, like ginger and sage, grow. I remove any harmful weeds so they stay healthy. The flavor of the herbs is incredible, and they make my food so tasty. I water my plants every day. They make me very happy.

Visiting a new place

Last weekend, my family went to Qaroun Lake. My parents and I prepared well for our little adventure. The story took place at the lake, which was very big and beautiful. We saw lots of birds and enjoyed the fresh air. The lake is well known for its history. It was a perfect day for our family trip.



Search

From : wael2@yahoo.com
To : sami.a@yahoo.com
Subject : invitation to visit Egypt.

Hi Sami,

The weather in Egypt is great all year! It's usually sunny and warm with a clear sky, so we play outside a lot. On very hot days, we find shade to cool down. Sometimes it gets cold, and we see dark clouds and a little rainy weather, but the sun comes back fast.

Your friend,
Wael

Caring for Plants

To have a healthy plant, you need to give it a lot of water. It's also important to pull out all the weeds that try to grow around it. I grow different herbs in my garden. I give my plants special food called natural fertilizer to help them grow strong. This keeps my whole garden happy!

Protecting our Earth

We all can help to protect our Earth. One of the easiest things we can do is to recycle paper and plastic bottles. When we recycle, it stops pollution from harming our air and water. This simple and nice change in our daily routines can save our environment. These small actions help keep our planet clean and safe, creating a better place for everyone to live.

Life around the Nile

To have a healthy plant, you need to give it a lot of water. It's also important to pull out all the weeds that try to grow around it. I grow different herbs in my garden. I give my plants special food called natural fertilizer to help them grow strong. This keeps my whole garden happy!



Practice 3 on Unit 2

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Total

60

1

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

shade - weeds - jasmine - pull - water

Sara : What are you doing in the garden, Youssef?

Youssef: I'm planting some ① flowers. They smell wonderful!

Sara : That's nice. Are you going to ② them now?

Youssef: Yes, and I also need to ③ out the ④ from the soil.

Sara : Great! Let's sit in the ⑤ after we finish because it's sunny today.

2

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

1. computer - hibiscus - jasmine - parsley

2. see - wear - grow - bottle

3. sunny - plant - rainy - windy

4. river - pyramid - waterfall - clouds

5. phone - insects - weeds - sun

3

Choose the correct answer:

1. Farmers (throw - fly - sit - grow) plants in the garden.

2. The weather is (sunny - pencil - parsley - pull) today.

3. We use (rainy - natural - plastic - dangerous) fertilizer to help plants grow.

4. Hibiscus is used to make a (tasty - hard - full - soil) drink that many people enjoy.
5. People use boats to (swim - sleep - travel - dig) in the Nile.
6. She (is planting - planting - plants - planted) a tree now.
7. What (do you doing - are doing - is you doing - are you doing) now?
8. Look! They (pull - pulling - are pulling - is pulling) out weeds.
9. The children (am playing - are playing - is playing - playing) outside.
10. We (don't water - aren't water - aren't watering - watering not) the plants at the moment.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

We should care for our nature. People grow herbs like mint, basil, and parsley in their gardens. These plants are good for our health. To help them grow, we must use natural fertilizer and pull out the weeds. Watering the plants every day helps them stay fresh and green. If plants are dry for a long time, they die. Herbs are wonderful plants.

A Answer the following questions:

1. What herbs do people usually grow?
▶
2. How can we help plants grow?
▶
3. Why should we water plants every day?
▶

B Choose the correct answer:

4. The opposite of "dry" is (hard - clean - green - wet).
5. Pulling out weeds is (bad - important - noisy - heavy).

5

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. water - the - **We** - every day - plants - must.2. herbs - **Some** - good - health - for - are.3. jasmine - smells - **The** - amazing - plant.4. clean - **We** - environment - must - our - keep.5. in - relaxing - the - is - shade - sitting - **He** - and.

6

Write a short story of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Caring for Plants"**▶ plant - weeds - water - pull - natural fertilizer**

Practice 4 on Unit 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Last week we had an interesting lesson about (harming - protecting - throwing - breaking) the Earth.
2. Pollution is (harmful - energy - pollution - flowers) to animals and people.
3. Clean energy like solar power is (plastic - water - air - better) for nature.
4. We must keep our environment (safe - helpful - harmful - healthy) and clean.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Solar power is (dirty - clean - plastic - fast) energy.
2. The opposite of "harmful" is (strong - clean - safe - weak).
3. We should be (careless - careful - noisy - harmful) when we protect nature.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wheat - Egyptian - travel - kingfishers - nature

Many animals live in and near the Nile. Big fish like Nile perch and tilapia swim in the water. Many birds come to the river to drink and find food. You can see ①, herons, and ducks near the Nile.

The Nile is very important for ② people. In the past, the river flooded and brought good soil. Farmers used this soil to grow food like ③ and vegetables. The Nile provides people and animals with water to drink. People also use the river to ④ in boats.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

In Alexandria, it's windy and rainy. The sky is **full** of dark clouds and the waves are high. People are staying indoors because it's cold and the streets are wet. Some shops are closing early. On the other hand, In Aswan, it is hot. The sun is very strong, and the sky is clear. Farmers water their plants early in the morning. People drink lots of water, wear hats and sunglasses, and sit in the shade to protect themselves from the sun.

Now, Egyptians are checking the weather to help people take care of their homes and plants.

A

Choose the correct answer:

1. The sun is very strong, and the sky is clear in (Cairo - Alex - Aswan - Sindi).
2. The opposite of the word "**full**" is (luck - crowded - mistake - empty).

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What are the Egyptians doing right now?



4. Why do people drink lots of water in Aswan?



5. Give a suitable title for the text.



5

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. grow - water, - Plants - to - and care - need - well - sunlight.



2. Wadi El Rayan - a trip - organized - We - to - National Park.



6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The tap in the school bathroom was working perfectly. ()
2. The puddles were found inside the classroom. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. Where does the story take place?
▶
4. What was happening in the garden?
▶

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Hala (not study) English at the moment.
2. Look! Some people (throw) rubbish in the street.

8 Punctuate the sentences:

1. yes it tastes good.
▶

2. That s cool
▶

9 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Protecting our Earth"

▶ recycle - pollution - plastic

.....

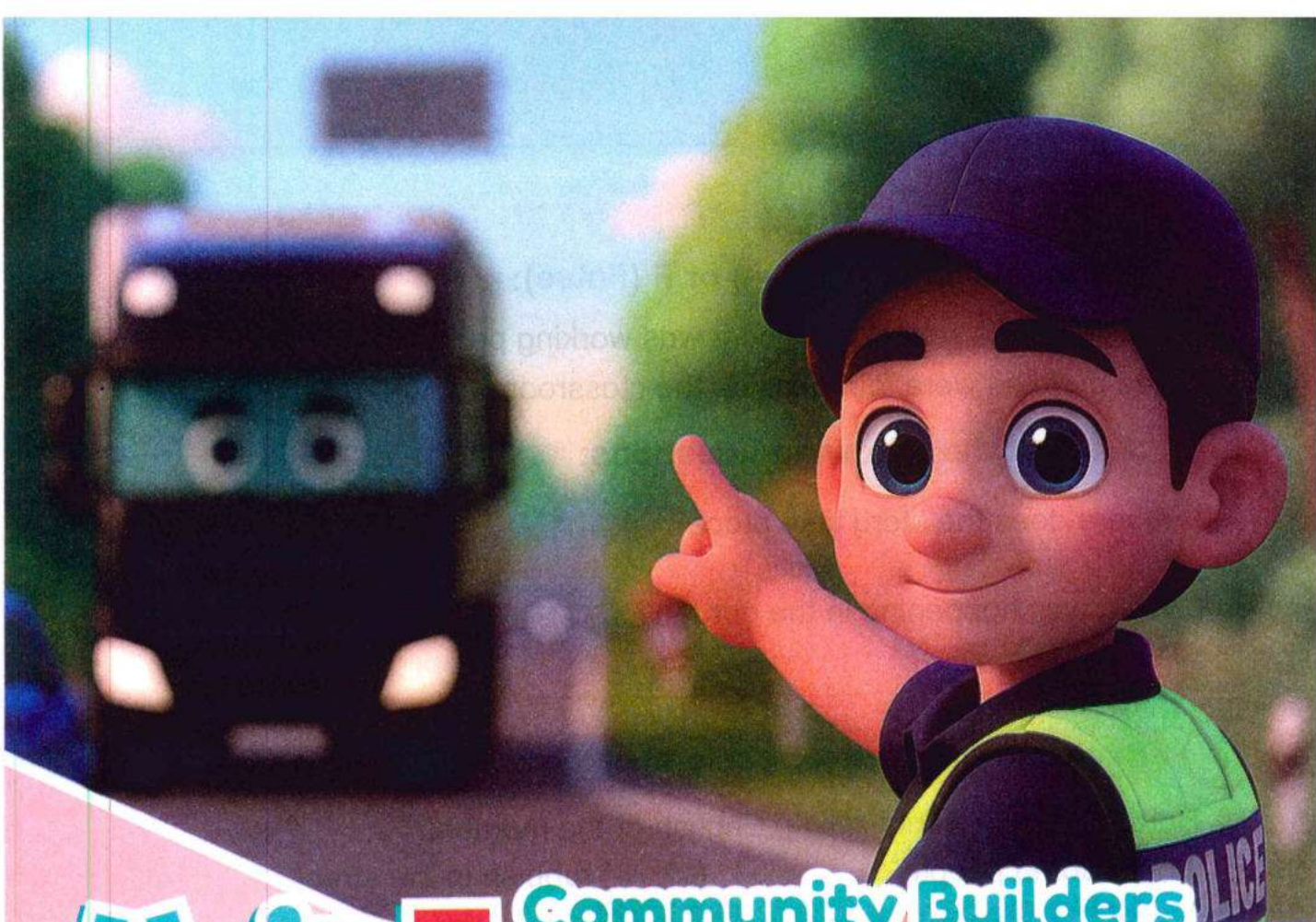
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 3 Community Builders

بناء المجتمع

Learning Outcomes



Speaking

- Describe jobs that help build a community.
- Talk about ability and permission using can/can't/able to.



Listening

- Identify features of different jobs needed in the community.
- Follow conversations about helping the community.
- Recognize two and three syllable words with long sounds.



Reading

- Identify key vocabulary in reading texts.
- Identify the moral and characters of a fictional story.
- Recognize elements and specific details in a biography.



Writing

- Write a biography of a famous Egyptian person.
- Create a poster identifying and solving a community problem.

Lesson 1

Jobs that Help the Community



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



jobs

وظائف



paramedic

مسعف



architect

مهندس معماري



water resources engineer

مهندس موارد مائية



mechanic

ميكانيكي



tailor

خياط - ترزي



delivery person

عامل توصيل



street cleaner

عامل نظافة للشوارع



traffic officer

ضابط مرور

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

emergency

طوارئ

vehicle

مركبة - سيارة

community

مجتمع

research

بحث

control (n.)

تحكم - سيطرة

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

look for	يبحث عن	sounds fun	يبدو ممتعًا
a group of	مجموعة من	That's cool	هذا رائع
learn about + sth.	يتعلم عن شيء ما	make sure	يتأكد
make sth. happen	يجعل شيئًا يحدث	save lives	ينقذ الأرواح
do research	يجري بحثًا	control cars	يتحكم في حركة السيارات

Adjectives

صفات

afraid	خائف	important	مهم
scary	مخيف	brave	شجاع
sudden	مفاجئ		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
cross	يعبر	crossed	crossed
fix	يصلح	fixed	fixed
help	يساعد	helped	helped
save	ينقذ / يحفظ	saved	saved
want	يريد	wanted	wanted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
get	يأخذ	got	got
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
make	يصنع	made	made

Definitions تعريفات

vehicles

things that people use to travel, like cars
buses and bikes

research

to look for information to learn more about
something

emergency

a sudden dangerous situation that needs quick
help

community

a group of people who live or work together in the
same place

brave

not afraid to do something difficult or scary

control

make something happen or stop

Read and learn



Omar : Hi, Youssef! Hi, Salma!

عمر : مرحبًا، يوسف! مرحبًا، سلمى!

Youssef : Hey, Omar! What are you doing?

يوسف : أهلا يا عمر، عمر! ماذا تفعل؟

Omar : I'm doing research about jobs that help
our community?

عمر : أقوم بعمل بحث عن الوظائف التي تساعد مجتمعنا.

Salma : That sounds fun! Can we help?

سلمى : يبدو ذلك ممتعًا! هل يمكننا المساعدة؟

Omar : Sure! I want to make a list of jobs and how they help
the community.

عمر : بالتأكيد! أريد أن أعد قائمة بالوظائف وكيف تساعد المجتمع.

Youssef : Great idea. I want to be a mechanic.

يوسف : فكرة رائعة. أريد أن أصبح ميكانيكيًا.

Salma : Why a mechanic?

سلمى : لماذا ميكانيكي؟

Unit 3

Youssef : Because mechanics fix vehicles, and I like fixing things.

يوسف : لأن الميكانيكيين يصلحون المركبات، وأنا أحب إصلاح الأشياء.

Omar : That's cool! I want to be a water resources engineer.

عمر : هذا رائع! أريد أن أكون مهندسًا لموارد المياه.

Salma : What do water resources engineers do?

سلمى : ماذا يفعل مهندسوا موارد المياه؟

Omar : They make sure we get clean water in our homes and schools.

عمر : يتأكدون من حصولنا على مياه نظيفة في منازلنا ومدارسنا.

Youssef : That's a very important job!

يوسف : إنها وظيفة مهمة جدًا!

Salma : I want to be a paramedic. They help people in emergencies.

سلمى : أريد أن أكون مُسعفة. فهم يساعدون الناس في حالات الطوارئ.

Omar : That's a brave job. You'll help save lives.

عمر : إنها وظيفة شجاعة. ستساعدون في إنقاذ الأرواح.

Youssef : I also like the job of a traffic officer.

يوسف : أنا أيضًا أحب وظيفة ضابط المرور.

Salma : Me too. They help people cross the road and control cars.

سلمى : وأنا كذلك. فهم يساعدون الناس على عبور الطريق ويتحكمون في حركة السيارات.

Omar : What about a street cleaner?

عمر : ماذا عن عامل النظافة في الشارع؟

Salma : They clean the streets and help keep the city beautiful.

سلمى : إنهم ينظفون الشوارع ويساعدون في إبقاء المدينة جميلة.



Listen again and answer the questions:

1. Why do all the students think these jobs are important?



2. Who is doing research about jobs that help the community?



3. Why does Youssef want to be a mechanic?



4. How do paramedics help people?



Choose the correct answer:



1. What is Omar doing at the beginning of the conversation?

a) writing a story

b) reading a book

c) doing research about jobs that help the community

d) watching a movie

2. What kind of job does Youssef want to do?

a) doctor

b) engineer

c) mechanic

d) teacher

3. Why does Youssef want to be a mechanic?

a) He likes helping people in emergencies.

b) He wants to work in an office.

c) He enjoys fixing things.

d) He likes wearing uniforms.

4. What job does Omar want to do?

a) traffic officer

b) water resources engineer

c) tailor

d) delivery person

5. What do water resources engineers do?

a) fix cars

b) make clothes

c) provide clean water

d) control traffic

6. What job does Salma say she wants to do?

a) paramedic

b) mechanic

c) police officer

d) carpenter

7. Why is the job of a paramedic important?

a) They clean the streets.

b) They help people in emergencies.

c) They fix clothes.

d) They drive buses.

Choose the correct answer:

Student's
Book

1. A (street cleaner - delivery person) brings food, letters, or packages to places.
2. Water resources (doctors - engineers) make sure people get clean water in our homes and schools.
3. Mechanics fix (vehicles - computers).
4. The traffic officer helps people (make - cross) the road.
5. A (paramedic - street cleaner) is usually the first person to arrive and give medical help in an emergency.

Read and complete:

Student's
Book

cleaners - research - emergency - important - tailor

1. The fixed my old dress.
2. Adam is doing for school.
3. Yesterday, I saw a paramedic helping people in an
4. Street help keep the city beautiful.
5. Every job is and matters

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mechanic - Street cleaners - community - emergency - control

There are a lot of jobs in our country that try to help it be a better one. For example, in our ① many brilliant people work hard every day. Paramedics are always ready for an ②, helping people in need. ③ keep areas tidy. Traffic officers ④ roads. All these jobs are important to keep our city running smoothly.

2 Put the words in the correct order:

1. important - jobs - community - in - All - are - our.

2. felt - Adam - embarrassed - when - down - he - fell.

- [illegible]

-

- QUESTION

3

People have many different jobs. A paramedic helps people in emergencies. An architect designs buildings, while a water resources engineer works to protect water. A mechanic fixes cars. A tailor makes or mends clothes. A delivery person brings packages to homes. A street cleaner keeps the roads clean. A traffic officer controls traffic and keeps drivers safe. Every job is important and helps the community in different ways.

- 1.** A delivery person
a) fix cars **b)** bring packages
c) clean streets **d)** controls traffic
- 2.** A helps control traffic
a) traffic officer **b)** tailor **c)** engineer **d)** street cleaner

4

- ▶

- [illegible]

Lesson 2

Let's help our community



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



posters

ملصقات



traffic

حركة المرور



traffic officers

ضباط المرور



signs

لافتات



bin

سلة مهملات



garbage

قمامة



garbage bags

أكياس قمامة

Signs

لافتات



Drive slowly!

قُد ببطء



Please use the bin.

من فضلك استخدم صندوق القمامة.

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

problem

مشكلة

principal

مدير - ناظر

classmates

زملاء الفصل

health

صحة

environment

بيئة

parents

الوالدين

Adjectives

صفات

noisy	مزعج	little	قليل (صغير الحجم)
near	قريب	terrible	فظيع
dangerous	خطير	safe(ly)	آمن (بشكل آمن)
slow(ly)	بطيء - ببطء	better	أفضل

Expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

get better	يتحسن	look terrible	يبدو فظيغًا - سيئ الشكل
That's not okay.	هذا غير جيد	bad for	ضار لـ
You're right!	انت على حق	let us make	دعنا نضع / لنقم بـ
That's a great idea!	هذه فكرة عظيمة	things get better	تتحسن الأمور
There's another problem.	هذه مشكلة أخرى	cross the road safely	يعبر الطريق بأمان

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
cross	يعبر	crossed	crossed
join	يصل / ينضم	joined	joined
talk	يتكلم	talked	talked
walk	يمشي	walked	walked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
fly	يطير	flew	flown
drive	يقود	drove	driven
hang	يعلق	hung	hung

Present		Past	p.p.
show	يعرض	showed	shown
speak	يتكلم	spoke	spoken
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown
let	يترك	let	let



Read and learn



Mariam : Look at all the garbage near the park. It looks terrible.

مريم : انظروا إلى كل القمامة بالقرب من الحديقة.
إن شكلها فظيع.



Hadi : I know. People throw garbage everywhere. That's not okay.

هادي : أعلم. الناس يرمون القمامة في كل مكان. هذا غير مقبول.

Nour : We need to do something. It's bad for the environment.

نور : نحتاج أن نفعل شيئاً. هذا ضار بالبيئة.

Mariam : You're right. We can clean it this weekend.

مريم : أنت على حق. يمكننا تنظيفها هذا الأسبوع.

Hadi : Yes, I can bring some garbage bags.

هادي : نعم، يمكنني إحضار بعض أكياس القمامة.

Nour : I can ask my teacher to let us make posters to hang around the park.

نور : يمكنني أن أطلب من معلمتي أن تسمح لنا بصنع لافتات لنعلقها حول الحديقة.

Mariam : That's a great idea! I'll write, "Please use the bin."

مريم : إنها فكرة رائعة! سأكتب: "من فضلك استخدم سلة المهملات."

Hadi : Can we ask other students to join us?

هادي : هل يمكننا أن نطلب من طلاب آخرين الانضمام إلينا؟

Nour : Yes, we can. I'm sure our classmates will be able to help too.

نور : نعم، يمكننا. أنا متأكدة أن زملاءنا في الصف سيتمكنون من المساعدة أيضًا.

Mariam : But there's another problem — traffic near the school.

مريم : لكن هناك مشكلة أخرى — حركة المرور بالقرب من المدرسة.

Hadi : It's very noisy and dangerous.

هادي : إنه أمر مزعج وخطير جدًا.

Nour : We can't cross the road safely in the morning.

نور : لا يمكننا عبور الطريق بأمان في الصباح.

Mariam : Maybe we can ask our principal to help.

مريم : ربما يمكننا أن نطلب من المدير أن يساعد.

Hadi : Can she talk to someone about it?

هادي : هل يمكنها أن تتحدث مع شخص ما بشأن ذلك؟

Nour : Yes! She may be able to speak with the traffic officer.

نور : نعم! ربما تستطيع التحدث مع ضابط المرور.

Nour : I think we should make signs that say "Drive Slowly".

نور : أعتقد أنه يجب أن نصنع لافتات مكتوب عليها "قد يُبطأ".

Mariam : Can we give the signs to parents and drivers?

مريم : هل يمكننا أن نعطي اللافتات للأهالي والسائقين؟

Hadi : Yes, we can, and we should also walk or ride bikes when we can.

هادي : نعم، يمكننا، ويجب علينا أيضًا أن نمشي أو نركب الدراجات عندما نستطيع.

Nour : That's better for our health, too.

نور : هذا أفضل لصحتنا أيضًا.

Mariam : My little brother can't ride a bike yet, but he walks.

مريم : أخي الصغير لا يستطيع ركوب الدراجة بعد، لكنه يمشي.

Hadi : My sister is young, but she's able to ride with me.

هادي : أختي صغيرة، لكنها تستطيع أن تركب معي.

Nour : When we all help, things get better.

نور : عندما نساعد جميعًا، تتحسن الأمور.

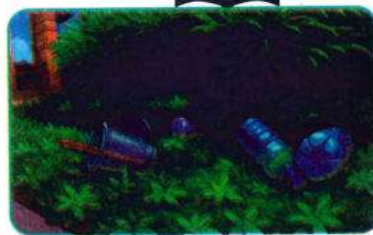
Listen again and answer the questions:



1. What problem do you see in this picture?



2. What can you do to solve this problem?



Choose the correct answer:



1. The traffic near the school is and dangerous.
 a) calm b) great c) noisy d) helpful
2. Let's ask our teacher to let us make to hang around the park.
 a) posters b) movies c) food d) books
3. When we all, things get better.
 a) play b) help c) dance d) jump
4. I think we should make signs that say "Drive !"
 a) fast b) hard c) great d) slowly
5. We should walk or bikes.
 a) ride b) fly c) drive d) hang

Language In Use



can - can't - able to

Can يستطيع أن

- We use can to talk about things we are able to do now.

نستخدم "can" للتحدث عن الأشياء التي نستطيع القيام بها الآن.

can + base verb
 الفعل الأساسي

Examples:

▶ I can ride a bike.

▶ She can run fast.

▶ A dog can bark.

لا يستطيع أن Can't

- We use can't to talk about things we are not able to do.

نستخدم "can't" للتحدث عن الأشياء التي لا نستطيع القيام بها الآن.

can't + base verb
الفعل الأساسي

Examples:

- ▶ I **can't drive** a car.
- ▶ He **can't play** the piano.
- ▶ A fish **can't walk** on land.

قادر أن Able To

- **Use:** Able to also means we have the ability to do something.

نستخدم "able to" للتحدث عن الأشياء التي نستطيع القيام بها الآن.

(am-is-are) + able To + base verb
الفعل الأساسي

Examples:

- ▶ I am **able to read** a whole chapter.
- ▶ The kid is **able to tie** his shoes.
- ▶ We are **able to jump** ropes.

Choose the correct word (can, can't, or able to) to complete each sentence:

1. A bird fly high in the sky.
2. I play the piano, but I am learning.
3. My little brother is not tie his shoes yet.
4. She speak three languages fluently.
5. We are finish our homework before dinner.
6. A penguin fly. It walks and swims.
7. The baby is to crawl across the room.
8. I am see the moon from my window tonight.

Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets:

1. I can finish my puzzle. (able to)

2. He is able to ride a horse. (can)

3. She can't reach the top shelf. (able to)

4. We are able to solve the math problem. (can)

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer:

- There was heavy on the road at noon, making it difficult to move with your car.
a) garbage b) traffic c) signs d) problems
- Please throw the in the bins to keep the street clean.
a) permission b) emergency c) garbage d) ability
- The stop says that drivers need to stop their vehicles.
a) problem b) sign c) permission d) emergency
- The cheetah can run very across the forest.
a) slowly b) safely c) fast d) hard
- Her to learn new languages quickly is truly impressive.
a) emergency b) permission c) problem d) ability
- It's to swim in that part of the sea because the waves are so strong.
a) safe b) helpful c) dangerous d) calm

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dangerous - slowly - respect - sign - traffic

Driving safely is very important. When you drive, you should always drive ①, especially near schools. A ② by the road might tell you that. It's not good to drive fast because that can be ③ We want everyone in our community to be safe. Remember to ④ the road and pay attention to all the signs.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. community - Let's - make - our - a - better - place.



2. signs - help - We - community - can - hang - to - the.



3. traffic - much - There's - too - in - the - city - today.



4. helpful - try - be - to - your - Always - neighbors - to.



5. beautiful - local - park - is - very - green - and - Our.



4 Write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:



Student's Book

1. She (not can) walk to school.

SB

2. I am (able) run fast.

SB

3. (Can't) they do the research? – Yes, they can.

SB

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Let s hang new posters around the school park



2. you should always drive slowly in neighborhoods



6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Road rules"



respect the road



drive slowly



cross carefully

Lessons 3 Story: The Proud Rose

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



rose

وردة



petals

أوراق الورد



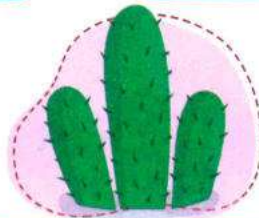
peck

ينقر بمنقاره



cactus

صبار



thorns

شوك

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

close friends	أصدقاء مقربون	creature	مخلوق
seasons	فصول السنة	moral	عبرة / درس مستفاد
beak	منقار	stem	ساق النبات
branch	فرع الشجرة		

Adjectives

الصفات

close	قريب / مُقَرَّب	sharp	حاد
dry	جاف	sweet	حلو
embarrassed	محرج	surprised	متفاجئ
pleasant	لطيف	ugly	قبيح
proud	فخور	unpleasant	غير سار / غير لطيف
refreshed	منتعش	weak	ضعيف
rough	خشن	uncomfortable	غير مريح
bright	لامع	mean	لئيم - سيئ

Adverbs	أحوال	
Adjective	Adverb	Meaning
gentle	gently	برفق
kind	kindly	بطيبة/بطف
safe	safely	بأمان
slow	slowly	ببطء
strong	strongly	بقوة
unkind	unkindly	بطريقة غير لطيفة

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

once upon a time	ذات مرة	fly down	يطير نزولاً
covered in	مغطى بـ	fly away	يطير بعيداً
make fun of (someone)	يستهزأ بـ / يسخر من (شخص ما)	at all	اطلاقاً
from then on	منذ ذلك الحين	come back to life	يعود الى الحياة
far away	بعيداً جداً	dry up	يجف
proud of	فخور بـ	peck at	ينقر
grew drier	ازداد جفافاً	never judge anyone by how they look	لا تحكم على احد من مظهره (شكله)

Definitions تعريفات

thorns	the sharp points that grow on the stem or branch of a plant to protect it.
petals	the soft, colorful parts of a flower that surround its center.
peck	to hit or pick up something with a beak, like a bird does.
unpleasant	is when something is not nice and makes you feel unhappy or uncomfortable.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
admire	يُعجَب / يُقدِّر	admired	admired
apologize	يعتذر	apologized	apologized
judge	يحكم / يقضي	judged	judged
park	يركن (سيارة)	parked	parked
peck	ينقر (بمنقار)	pecked	pecked
recover	يتعافى / يستعيد	recovered	recovered
respond	يرد / يستجيب	responded	responded
smell	يشم	smelled	smelled
sparkle	يلمع / يتلألأ	sparkled	sparkled
store	يُخزّن	stored	stored
surround	يحيط	surrounded	surrounded
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
treat	يعامل	treated	treated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
become	يصبح - يصير	became	become
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
feel	يشعر - يحس	felt	felt
fly	يطير	flew	flown
shine	يلمع - يشرق	shone	shone
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought



Read and Learn

The Proud Rose الزهرة المتفاخرة



Once upon a time, in a dry desert far away, there lived a beautiful rose. She had soft red petals that sparkled in the sunlight and gave off a sweet, lovely smell. Every **creature** in the desert admired her beauty, and the rose knew it. She was very proud of how she looked and believed she was the most special plant in the desert.



في يوم من الأيام، في صحراء جافة بعيدة، كانت تعيش وردة جميلة. كانت أوراقها الحمراء الناعمة تتلألأ تحت أشعة الشمس وتفوح منها رائحة عطرة وجميلة. كانت كل الكائنات في الصحراء تُعجب بجمالها، وكانت الوردة تعلم ذلك. كانت فخورة جداً بمظهرها وتعتقد أنها أكثر نبتة مميزة في الصحراء.

Growing next to the rose was an old, rough cactus. He was covered in long, sharp thorns and didn't have any flowers or **bright** colors. The rose didn't like the cactus at all. She looked at him every day and thought he was **unpleasant** to look at. "Why do you have so many thorns?" she would ask. "You're so rough and unpleasant to look at." Even though the cactus never said anything mean back, the rose kept making fun of him. وبجانب الوردة، كان هناك صبار قديم خشن. كان مغطى بالأشواك الطويلة الحادة، ولم يكن له أزهار أو ألوان زاهية. لم تكن الوردة تحب الصبار على الإطلاق. كانت تنظر إليه كل يوم وتظن أنه قبيح المنظر. وكانت تقول له: "لماذا لديك كل هذه الأشواك؟ أنت خشن وقبيح المظهر." وبرغم أن الصبار لم يرد عليها بأي كلام وقح، استمرت الوردة في السخرية منه.

Seasons passed, and one year, the summer was much hotter than usual. The sun **shone**, and the desert grew even drier. All the small plants began to dry up. Soon, the beautiful rose started to lose her color. Her petals became dry and weak. She was very thirsty, but there was no water anywhere. One day, the rose saw a small bird fly down and gently **peck** at the cactus. The bird drank some water from inside the cactus and flew away, happy and **refreshed**.

ومرت الفصول، وفي أحد الأعوام، أصبح الصيف أكثر حرارة من المعتاد. أشرقت الشمس بشدة وأصبحت الصحراء أكثر جفافاً. بدأت النباتات الصغيرة تجف وتموت. وبدأت الوردة الجميلة تفقد لونها، وأصبحت أوراقها جافة وضعيفة. شعرت بعطش شديد، لكن لم يكن هناك ماء في أي مكان وفي أحد الأيام، رأت الوردة طائراً صغيراً يهبط برفق و نقر على الصبار. شرب الطائر بعض الماء من داخل الصبار، ثم طار مبتسماً ومنتعشاً.

The rose was surprised. She didn't know the cactus had water inside. Feeling **embarrassed**, the rose spoke to the cactus. "I'm sorry for the way I treated you," she said. "I didn't know you were so strong and helpful. Could you please give me some water?" The kind cactus smiled and shared his water with the rose.

تفاجأت الوردة. لم تكن تعلم أن الصبار يحتوي على الماء. وبشعور من الخجل، قالت الوردة للصبار: "أنا آسفة على الطريقة التي عاملتك بها." لم أكن أعلم أنك قوي متعاون بهذا الشكل. هل يمكنك أن تعطيني بعض الماء؟" ابتسم الصبار الطيب، وشارك ماءه مع الوردة.

Slowly, the rose came back to life. From that day on, she never judged anyone by how they looked again.

وببطء، عادت الحياة إلى الوردة من جديد. ومنذ ذلك اليوم، لم تحكم على أحد من خلال مظهره مرة أخرى.



Language Notes:

- Every story has a **moral**. A **moral** is the lesson or message we learn from a story. It usually teaches us the difference between right and wrong, and helps us think about how we should act in real life
- لكل قصة عبرة (درس مستفاد). العبرة هي الدرس أو الرسالة التي نتعلمها من القصة. وعادة ما نُعلمنا الفرق بين الصواب والخطأ، وتساعدنا على التفكير في كيفية التصرف في الحياة الواقعية.

1) Read, think, and answer:



1. What happened to the rose in the summer?



2. How did the rose feel about how the cactus looked?



3. What did the cactus do for the rose when she asked for help?



4. What did the bird do to get water?



2) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:



Student's Book

1. The kind cactus shared his stored water with the rose.
2. At the beginning, the rose liked the cactus.
3. The rose didn't say sorry to the cactus.
4. The bird drank some water from inside the rose.
5. The cactus and the rose became friends.

()
()
()
()
()

3) Read and complete the summary using the words in the box



Student's Book

(said sorry - soft - rose - cactus - water - dry - proud)

In a ① desert, there lived a ② with ③ red petals. She was very ④ and often made fun of the rough ⑤ covered in sharp thorns. During a very hot summer, the desert became even drier, and the rose became weak and thirsty. One day, she saw a bird drink ⑥ from inside the cactus. Feeling sorry, she ⑦, and the kind cactus shared his water with her, and they became good friends.

Pronunciation



Syllables: المقاطع اللفظية

● A syllable is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.
المقطع اللفظي هو جزء من الكلمة يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد.

● A simple way to find syllables is by clapping:
الطريقة السهلة لكشف عدد المقاطع اللفظية هي عن طريق التصفيق:

● One syllable: Cat (1 clap) مقطع واحد: (تصفيقة واحدة)

● Two syllables: Wa-ter (2 claps) مقطعان : (تصفيقتان)

● Three syllables: El-e-phant (3 claps) ثلاثة مقاطع: (ثلاث تصفيقات)

Say each word below and clap for each syllable.
Write the number of syllables next to it



1. computer :	6. mechanic :
2. happy :	7. traffic :
3. dog :	8. vehicle :
4. beautiful :	9. architect :
5. tailor :	10. officer :

Stress: التشديد

- In words with two or more syllables, one syllable is always said with more force. This is called stress. The stressed syllable is louder and higher than the others.

في الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين أو أكثر، يُنطق أحد المقطعين دائماً بقوة أكبر. وهذا ما يُسمى التشديد. المقطع المُشدَّد أعلى صوتاً وأعلى من المقاطع الأخرى.

Rules of stress: قواعد التشديد

- In one-syllable words, the whole word is stressed.

في الكلمات ذات المقطع الواحد، تُشدد الكلمة بأكملها.

NURSE

- For most two-syllable nouns (people, places, things), the first syllable is stressed.

في معظم الأسماء ذات المقطعين (الأشخاص، الأماكن، الأشياء)، يُشدد المقطع الأول.

TEA-cher **TA**-ble **FARM**-er

- For most two-syllable verbs (actions), the second syllable is stressed.

في معظم الأفعال ذات المقطعين، يُشدد المقطع الثاني.

pro-**VIDE** be-**GIN** re-**TURN**

- In some three-syllable words, stress is on the second syllable.

في بعض الكلمات ذات الثلاثة مقاطع، يُشدد المقطع الثاني.

me-**CHAN**-ic

Choose the correct stress:

A-pple	a-PPLE
MU-sic	mu-SIC
PEN-cil	pen-CIL
PRE-fer	pre-FER

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. My best friend is very to me.
 a) strong b) close c) embarrassed d) ugly
2. The beautiful rose had lovely
 a) petals b) thorns c) branches d) trees
3. In, the weather is usually hot.
 a) autumn b) spring c) winter d) summer
4. The bird began to at the seeds on the ground.
 a) peck b) bark c) sing d) want
5. A is a plant that usually grows in dry places and doesn't need much water.
 a) flower b) cactus c) rose d) tree
6. He felt after winning the competition.
 a) proud b) ugly c) weak d) sharp
7. The sun brightly in the morning.
 a) sparkles b) wants c) pecks d) wears

2 Read the sentences. Write if the stress is on the first syllable or the second syllable of the bold words:

1. The **tailor** made a **beautiful** dress.
 ►
2. A **mechanic** fixed our **family** car yesterday.
 ►
3. The **architect** designed a new **school** building.
 ►
4. A **traffic** officer helped the **children** cross the **street** safely.
 ►
5. The **vehicle** was parked near the **library**.
 ►

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

petals - rose - weak - cactus - peck

Once upon a time, a beautiful ① grew in a garden. It had soft ② but also sharp thorns. Nearby, a ③ stood tall and dry. The rose thought the cactus was ugly because it didn't have colorful flowers. The cactus felt unpleasant being so dry. One summer day, the sun was very hot. The rose started to be ④ but the cactus stayed strong.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. a - has - **Every** - moral - story



2. the - officer - helped - old - woman - kindly - **The**



3. cactus - water - need - a - **Does** - much?



4. are - friends - **Close** - always - to - there - help



5. **He** - apologized - for - behavior - quickly - his



5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My teacher told us a story today. Once upon a time, there were two close friends. One friend made fun of the others new dress, saying it was an ugly color. The friend with the dress felt very sad and embarrassed. The teacher explained the moral of the story: always be kind and never judge anyone or make fun of their clothes. **She** told us we should always try to be pleasant and supportive. From then on, we all tried to be more kind and helpful to each other, understanding that words can hurt.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word She refers to (the teacher - the dress - the speaker - the friend).
2. The friend with the dress felt very (happy - sad - ugly - beautiful) and embarrassed.

B Answer the following questions:

1. Who told the story to the students?



2. What did one friend say about the dress?



3. What is the moral of the story?



- 6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Being kind"

► respect - laugh at

Lessons 4-5 Biography of an Egyptian Hero

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



awards

جوائز



global expert

خبير عالمي



biography

سيرة ذاتية



chemistry

كيمياء



scientist

عالِم



university

جامعة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

nanoparticles	الجُزيئات النانوية	food bank	بنك الطعام
causes	الأسباب	food waste	مخلفات الطعام
effects	الآثار - النتائج	idea	فكرة
solutions	الحلول	leftover food	بقايا الطعام
nanoscience	علوم النانو	materials	مواد
achievements	إنجازات	properly	بشكل صحيح - سليم
cancer	سرطان	rule	قاعدة
details	تفاصيل	types	أنواع
discoveries	اكتشافات	major	رئيسي
the United States	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	The US National Medal of Science	وسام العلوم الوطني الأمريكي
extra food	طعام إضافي		

Adjectives

صفات

amazing	مدهش - رائع	scientific	علمي
brilliant	لامع - عبقري	special	خاص - مُميّز
interesting	مثير للاهتمام	tiny	ضئيل - صغير جداً
main	رئيسي	poor	فقير

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

have great love for.....	يملك حباً كبيراً لـ	because of	بسبب - بفضل
from a young age	منذ سنٍ مبكرة	source of pride	مصدر فخر
named after	سُمّي على اسم.....		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
add	يُضيف	added	added
cause	يُسبب	caused	caused
continue	يستمر - يواصل	continued	continued
donate	يتبرع	donated	donated
plan	يُخطط	planned	planned
receive	يستلم - يستقبل	received	received
shop	يتسوّق	shopped	shopped
solve	يحل	solved	solved
start	يبدأ	started	started
store	يُخزّن	stored	stored
support	يدعم	supported	supported
treat	يُعالج - يتعامل مع	treated	treated
waste	يُهدر - يُضيع	wasted	wasted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
feed	يُطْعِم	fed	fed
find	يَجِد	found	found

Dr. Mostafa El Sayed: Science with a Golden Touch



Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist! He was born in Egypt in 1933 and had a great love for learning from a young age. He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo before going to the United States to continue his scientific research.

الدكتور مصطفى السيد هو عالم مصري لامع. وُلِدَ في مصر عام 1933، وكان يتمتع بحب كبير للتعلم منذ سن مبكرة. التحق بجامعة عين شمس في القاهرة، ثم سافر إلى الولايات المتحدة لمواصلة أبحاثه العلمية.



Dr. El-Sayed became a global expert in chemistry and nanoscience. Nanoscience is the study of very tiny things - much smaller than a human hair. One of his most important discoveries is called El-Sayed's Rule, a scientific idea that was named after him.

أصبح الدكتور السيد خبيراً عالمياً في الكيمياء وعلوم النانو. وعلوم النانو هي دراسة الأشياء الصغيرة جداً - أصغر بكثير من شعرة الإنسان. ومن أهم اكتشافاته ما يُعرف باسم "قاعدة السيد"، وهي فكرة علمية سُميت باسمه.

One of his biggest achievements is his work with tiny gold particles. He found out how these "gold nanoparticles" can be used to help doctors detect and treat some types of cancer.

واحدة من أعظم إنجازاته هي أبحاثه حول جزيئات الذهب الصغيرة. فقد اكتشف كيفية استخدام "جزيئات الذهب النانوية" لمساعدة الأطباء في الكشف عن بعض أنواع السرطان وعلاجها.

Because of his important discoveries, Dr. El-Sayed has received many major awards, including the U.S. National Medal of Science. He's a true hero of science and a source of pride for Egypt!

وبفضل اكتشافاته المهمة، حصل الدكتور السيد على العديد من الجوائز الكبرى، من بينها "وسام العلوم الوطني الأمريكي". إنه بطل حقيقي في مجال العلم ومصدر فخر لمصر!



Read and answer:

1. Where was Mostafa El-Sayed born?
▶
2. What did Dr. El-Sayed become an expert in?
▶
3. How could El-Sayed help doctors detect and treat some types of cancer?
▶
4. Why do you think Egypt is proud of Dr. El-Sayed?
▶



Writing Notes:

Here are some tips for writing a biography:

- 1 Start with key facts

نصائح لكتابة السيرة الذاتية / سيرة شخصية:

ابدأ بالحقائق الرئيسية.

- 2 Tell about their early life

تكلم عن حياتهم المبكرة.

- 3 Talk about what they did

تكلم عما فعلوه / إنجازاتهم.

- 4 Use the correct time order

استخدم التسلسل الزمني الصحيح.

- 5 Add interesting facts

أضف حقائق شيقة / مثيرة للاهتمام.

- 6 Use clear and simple language

استخدم لغة واضحة وبسيطة.

- 7 End with their impact on the world or their community

اختتم بتأثيرهم على العالم أو مجتمعهم.



Think and Create

Let's Solve a Community Problem:

هيا نحلّ مشكلة مجتمعية

● Food Waste:

إهدار الطعام

Example:

▶ **Food waste** is when we throw away food that we could have eaten.
إهدار الطعام هو عندما نرمي الطعام الذي كان بإمكاننا أن نأكله.

1 What are the causes?

ما هي الأسباب؟

● Causes mean why something happens.

الأسباب تعني لماذا يحدث شيء ما.

◆ People waste food because:

يهدر الناس الطعام بسبب

▶ People make more food than they eat.

الناس يصنعون طعامًا أكثر مما يمكنهم تناوله.

▶ Restaurants throw away leftover food.

ترمي المطاعم الطعام المتبقي.

▶ No easy way to donate extra food.

لا يوجد طريقة سهلة للتبرع بالطعام الزائد.

▶ People don't think about wasting food.

الناس لا يفكرون في (مشكلة) إهدار الطعام.

2 What are the effects?

ما هي الآثار؟

● Effects are what happen because of something.

الآثار هي ما يحدث نتيجة لشيء ما.

◆ The effects of food waste are:

آثار إهدار الطعام هي

▶ Good food is thrown away.

يتم رمي الطعام الجيد.

▶ Many poor people don't get food.

لا يحصل الكثير من الفقراء على الطعام الذي يحتاجونه.

▶ Wasting food wastes money and water.

إهدار الطعام يهدر أيضًا المال والماء.

▶ More garbage, which causes more pollution.

المزيد من القمامة، مما يسبب زيادة التلوث.

3 What are the solutions?

ما هي الحلول؟

● Solutions are ways to fix a problem.

الحلول هي طرق لإصلاح مشكلة ما.

◆ We can stop food waste by:

يمكننا وقف إهدار الطعام عن طريق

▶ Plan meals.

تخطيط وجباتنا (قبل الطهي).

▶ Shop smart.

التسوق بذكاء (بحيث نشترى فقط ما نحتاجه).

▶ Support food banks.

دعم بنوك الطعام (التي تقدم الطعام للناس).

▶ Feed animals leftovers.

إطعام الحيوانات بقايا طعامنا.

▶ Store food properly.

تخزين الطعام بشكل صحيح.

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. A hero often receives many for their brave actions.

- a) awards b) ideas c) rules d) types

2. Studying nanoscience involves working with very materials.

- a) brilliant b) daily c) huge d) tiny

3. The main for the project is to build a small robot.

- a) meal b) material c) waste d) idea

4. Understanding the causes of a problem helps us find the right

- a) details b) rules c) types d) solutions

5. The effects of air can be serious for our health.

- a) heroes b) meals c) awards d) pollution

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

achievements - leftover - award - food bank - great

Our local hero received a/an ① for his daily work helping the community. He had an interesting idea to collect ② food and deliver meals to those in need. This reduced food waste and had a ③ effect on many families, showing that his ④ were important.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. food - **The** - food - bank - collects - leftover.



2. of - pollution - have - effects - serious - types - **Many**.



3. chemistry - an - is - expert - **Our** - teacher - in



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Dr. Sarah is a global expert in nanoscience. She wrote a biography about her achievements in chemistry. Her discoveries include nanoparticles that help fight cancer. She works at a famous university in the United States. This brilliant scientist studies the causes, effects, and solutions of pollution. She won many awards, including the US National Medal of Science, for her amazing work and scientific ideas.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dr. Sarah wrote a about her life.

- a) a science rule
c) a biography

- b) a food recipe
d) a newspaper article

2. Dr. Sarah discovered

- a) large materials
c) garbage particles

- b) nanoparticles
d) food particles

B Answer the following questions:

3. What is Dr. Sarah's main field of study?

▶

4. What is one use of the nanoparticles?

▶

5. Where does Dr. Sarah work?

▶

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. scientists made amazing discoveries at the university

▶

2. why does the chemistry expert use tiny gold particles

▶

6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"A biography"

▶ **Choose a character you love.**

▶ **Organize information and facts about his/her life.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 3

Main Vocabulary

architect	مهندس معماري	water resources engineer	مهندس موارد مائية
awards	جوائز	delivery person	عامل توصيل
bin	سلة مهمالت	traffic officer	ضابط مرور
biography	سيرة ذاتية	traffic	حركة مرور
cactus	صبار	signs	لافتات
chemistry	كيمياء	creature	مخلوق
garbage	قمامة	close friends	أصدقاء مقربون
garbage bags	أكياس قمامة	seasons	فصول السنة
global expert	خبير عالمي	beak	منقار
jobs	وظائف	branch	فرع شجرة
mechanic	ميكانيكي	moral	درس مستفاد - عبرة
paramedic	مسعف	stem	سلق النبات
peck	ينقر بمنقاره	nanoparticles	جزيئات نانوية
petals	أوراق الورد	causes	أسباب
posters	ملصقات	effects	آثار
rose	وردة	solutions	حلول
scientist	عالم	problems	مشاكل
tailor	خياط - ترزي	nanoscience	علم النانو
thorns	شوك	achievements	إنجازات
university	جامعة	cancer	سرطان

Language In Use



can - can't - able to

Can يستطيع أن

● We use can to talk about things we are able to do now.

► I can ride a bike.

Can't لا يستطيع أن

● We use can't to talk about things we are not able to do.

► I **can't drive** a car.

Able To قادر أن

● Use: Able to also means we have the ability to do something.

► I am **able to read** a whole chapter.



Dictation:

emergency	غير مريح
community	لثيم - سيء
control	مزعج
vehicle	يتأكد
research	يبحث عن
afraid	يصلح
scary	أوراق الوردة
drive slowly	ملصقات
classmates	خياط - ترزي
principal	شوك
parents	لامع - عبقرى
noisy	علمي
near	فقير
dry	تفاصيل
proud	اكتشافات
refreshed	أنواع
rough	مواد
bright	بشكل صحيح
extra food	قاعدة
major	بقايا الطعام

Writing Skills

Jobs That Help the Community

Many people have important jobs that help our community. A paramedic helps sick people, and a street cleaner keeps our city clean and tidy. An architect designs our buildings, and a mechanic fixes cars. A delivery person brings us food and things we need, and a tailor makes our clothes. All these jobs make our lives better.

Road rules

It's very important to respect the road. Drivers should drive slowly in the streets and near schools. People who are walking should always cross carefully at crosswalks. We should hang signs to help people learn the road rules. Following these simple rules helps to keep everyone safe, whether they are in a car or walking on the street.

Being Kind

It is so important to respect everyone, no matter what. We should always be kind to our friends and classmates. We should never laugh at someone if they make a mistake or if they are different from us. Being a good friend means treating others with kindness and care every day.

Biography of Mohammed Salah

Mohamed Salah is a famous football player from Egypt. He loves to play football and worked very hard to become a star. He is known for being kind and helping people in his home country. His amazing talent and speed on the field make him a hero to many people around the world.

Helping Our Community

There are many jobs that help our community. Traffic officers are brave and keep us safe. We can all work together to make our streets safer. It is important to support our community by hanging signs to help the others. Everyone can make the community a better place by following the rules.

Important Jobs in My Community

Many people have important jobs that help our community every day. Doctors help sick people get well. Firefighters keep us safe from fires. Teachers help us learn new things in school. Police officers work to protect our city. All these people have jobs that make our community a better place to live.



Practice 5 on Unit 3

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Total

60

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

community - scared - paramedic - emergency - support

Hassan : Hi, Khaled. How are you? You look ①

Khaled : There's a car accident near the school!

Hassan : Oh no! We must call a ② quickly.

Khaled : Yes. They're trained to help in any ③

Hassan : I feel proud of people who work in our ④

Khaled : Me too. They always ⑤ each other to keep us safe.

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. tailor - mechanic - architect - palace

2. dry - hot - huge - hose

3. fix - cross - angry - bring

4. donate - store - save - tiny

5. sparkled - unpleasant - soft - bench

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. A traffic officer helps (control - drive - carry) the cars on the street.

2. My brother is a/an (architect - teacher - officer). He designs tall buildings.

3. I was (embarrassed - happy - different) when I forgot my lines on stage.

4. He did great (achievements - flowers - particles) in science class.

5. People should (hang - feed - get better) signs to keep the street clean.

6. Scientists do (support - research - leftovers) to find new solutions.
7. We (can - can't - are able) to help in the community.
8. (Can - Do - Is) you help me carry these bags?
9. My sister is only 2 years old; she (can - can't - must) swim.
10. Where is my bag? I (can - able to - can't) find it.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

People can help protect the environment in many ways. One problem is air pollution caused by smoke and fumes from cars and factories. People can use public transport or ride bicycles to **reduce** pollution. Another problem is water waste. We should turn off the tap while brushing our teeth. Everyone should be responsible and find ways to care for our planet. Small actions can make big changes.

A

Answer the following questions:

1. What causes air pollution?



2. How can we reduce water waste?



3. Why is it important to protect the environment?



B

Choose the correct answer:

4. The opposite of "**reduce**" is (save - increase - reuse).
5. Smoke and fumes come from (plants - cars - benches).

5

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. brave - is - A - paramedic - a very - person.



2. used - This - for - hose - is - cleaning.



3. the - hung - **They** - entrance - on - signs - each.



4. **Tailors** - clothes - making - good - at - are.



5. should - **We** - the - protect - environment - to - better - live.



6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Helping my community"



► jobs - clean - support - citizens - brave - help - posters -
traffic officer - together

Handwriting practice area with 10 horizontal lines for writing a paragraph.

Practice 6 on Unit 3



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. A paramedic helps people during an (emergency - season - experiment - discovery).
2. The architects work hard on (vehicle - buildings - drain - creature).
3. The traffic officer controls the (public transport - particles - entrance - signs).
4. The police men work hard to make a (angry - dangerous - safe - natural) community.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. My sister is a (tailor - sign - entrance - vehicle). She makes clothes.
2. We must use water wisely. It is (huge - public - precious - dry).
3. You are (made of - responsible - planning - riding) for your own homework.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

brilliant - expert - learn - research

Dr. Ahmad Zewail is a ① scientist. For years, he has been doing ② on different fields of science. He has always loved to ③ new things. By hard work, Dr. Ahmed Zewail became an ④ in many fields, and many organizations all over the world depend on his work and research.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Some jobs are very important in our community. For example, a paramedic helps during emergencies, and a street cleaner keeps the streets clean. A delivery person brings food to our homes. All of them are responsible and work together to make the community better.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. A person who helps in an emergency is a
a) mechanic b) tailor c) paramedic d) citizen
2. A street cleaner keeps the clean.
a) school b) house c) village d) street

B Answer the following questions:

3. What is the job of a delivery person?
▶

4. Why do all these people work together?
▶

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. up - solutions - did - **What** - you - with - come?
▶ ?

2. discoveries - **Some** - brilliant - made - scientists.
▶

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The friends didn't continue the project when they heard their unkind classmate. ()
2. Mr. Youssef said a small drip could waste liters of water each day. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. How did Ahmed plan to use the photos he took?

▶

4. What did one of Farida's posters say?

▶

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. Sara (able to) do her homework alone.

2. (Must) I use your phone to make a call?

8 Punctuate the following sentence

1. the architect planned the building with huge entrances

▶

2. what happened to the rose

▶

9 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Important Jobs in My Community"

▶ paramedic - officer - mechanic - citizens - work - together - job - important - brave - help

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 1 | On Units 1-2-3

Practice 7 based on units 1 - 2 - 3

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

teacher - community - job - doing - nurse

Hamza: Hi, Mazen!

Mazen: Hello, Hamza! What are you ①

Hamza: I want to make a list of jobs that help the ②

Mazen: Great idea. I want to be a ③

Hamza: Why a teacher?

Mazen: Because he teaches children, and I love children.

Hamza: That's cool! I want to be a ④ because he helps doctors cure sick people.

Mazen: That's a very important ⑤ !

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. go - do - knew - write

2. tab - mobile phone - computer - iPhone

3. Egypt - Cairo - Sohag - AL Mansura

4. chicken - kitchen - meat - fish

5. man - woman - boy - women

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. My dad (go - goes - going) to work early.

2. Look! the street cleaners (clean - cleaned - are cleaning) the roads.

3. We usually (do - does - are doing) our best.

Review 7D

4. My grandmother (**can** - **can't** - **do**) weave wool to make blankets.
5. What job (**do** - **does** - **did**) your brother do?
6. (**Teachers** - **traffic officers** - **Officers**) help people cross the road and control cars.
7. The Nile is the longest river in the (**USA** - **Iraq** - **world**).
8. Scientists found the (**skeletons** - **fossil** - **skull**) of ancient whales there.
9. I (**catch** - **accompany** - **keep**) my friends to the school every day.
10. The rose saw a small bird fly down and gently (**peck** - **talks** - **look**) at the cactus.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist! He was born in Egypt in 1933. He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo before going to the United States to continue his scientific research. Dr. El-Sayed became a global expert in chemistry and nanoscience. Nanoscience is the study of very tiny things. One of his most important discoveries is called El-Sayed's Rule, a scientific idea that was named after him.

A

Answer the following questions:

1. When was Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed born?
▶
2. What is nanoscience?
▶
3. Why is Dr. El-Sayed famous in the science world?
▶

B

Choose the correct answer:

4. Dr. El-Sayed studied at (**Cairo University** - **Ain Shams University** - **Alexandria University**).
5. El-Sayed's Rule is related to (**physics** - **chemistry** - **biology**).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. learning - love - great - **He** - had - for - a.

▶

2. see - birds - the - tree - **Sami** - standing - on - can - the.

▶

3. river, - too - in - **Crocodiles** - the - live.

▶

4. build - temples - the - **They** - river - faraway -didn't .

▶

5. near - mangrove - trees - beach - **There** - are - the.

▶

6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"A Day in a School"

▶ teachers - playground - library

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice 7 based on units 1 - 2 - 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. What is the weather like in Cairo today? (rainy - sunny - cloudy - snowy)
2. Where is the family planning to visit? (The Pyramids of Giza - Ras Mohamed National Park - The Nile River - Ras Mohamed Temple)
3. What can they see at Ras Mohamed National Park? (colorful fish - coral reefs - ancient statues - a & b)
4. Where is "Ras Mohamed National Park"? It is in (Cairo - Alexandria - Aswan - Giza).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Mechanics - Paramedics - Supermarkets - Water resources engineers) make sure we get clean water in our homes and schools.
2. There are many beautiful doors and buildings with Arabic (designs - tools - deserts - streets).
3. The Ancient Egyptians thought the Nile was (terrible - special - useless - empty).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

proud - care - each other - moral - sad

The story of the proud rose teaches us a lesson. The ① of this story is "everyone, no matter how small, can make a difference." So when we work together to take ② of our school, our town, and our whole country, Egypt, we all feel happy and ③ It's great to live in a place where people help ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

At my school, we often talk about how we can help our community. We have a special garden where we learn all about caring for plants. We water them, remove weeds, and make sure they get enough sunlight. This is a small work, but important way we make our school and our community more beautiful. It's a fun part of a day in my school. We all work together to think and create a better, more beautiful place.

A Choose the correct answer:

- What do the students care for in the school garden?
a) Animals b) Plants c) Books d) Toys
- Why is the garden important?
a) It makes the school and community more beautiful.
b) It is a place to play games.
c) It is used for sports.
d) It stores school supplies.

B Answer the following questions:

- What do the students learn in the garden?
▶
- How do the students work together in the garden?
▶
- Give a suitable title for the text.
▶

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- and - happy - **Helping** - each - makes - other - proud - us.
▶

- work - important - is - little - but - **This** - a.
▶

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The tap in the school bathroom was working perfectly. ()
2. The head teacher gave the friends money. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. Who had an idea to fix the water problem? ▶
4. What did Noor say to the unkind classmate? ▶

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. My friend can (helps) me when I need.
2. Look! They are (cut) all the trees.

8 Punctuate the following sentence

1. For example firefighters keep us safe

▶

2. It s a fun part of a day in my school

▶

9 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Caring for Plants"

▶ water - sunlight - care

.....

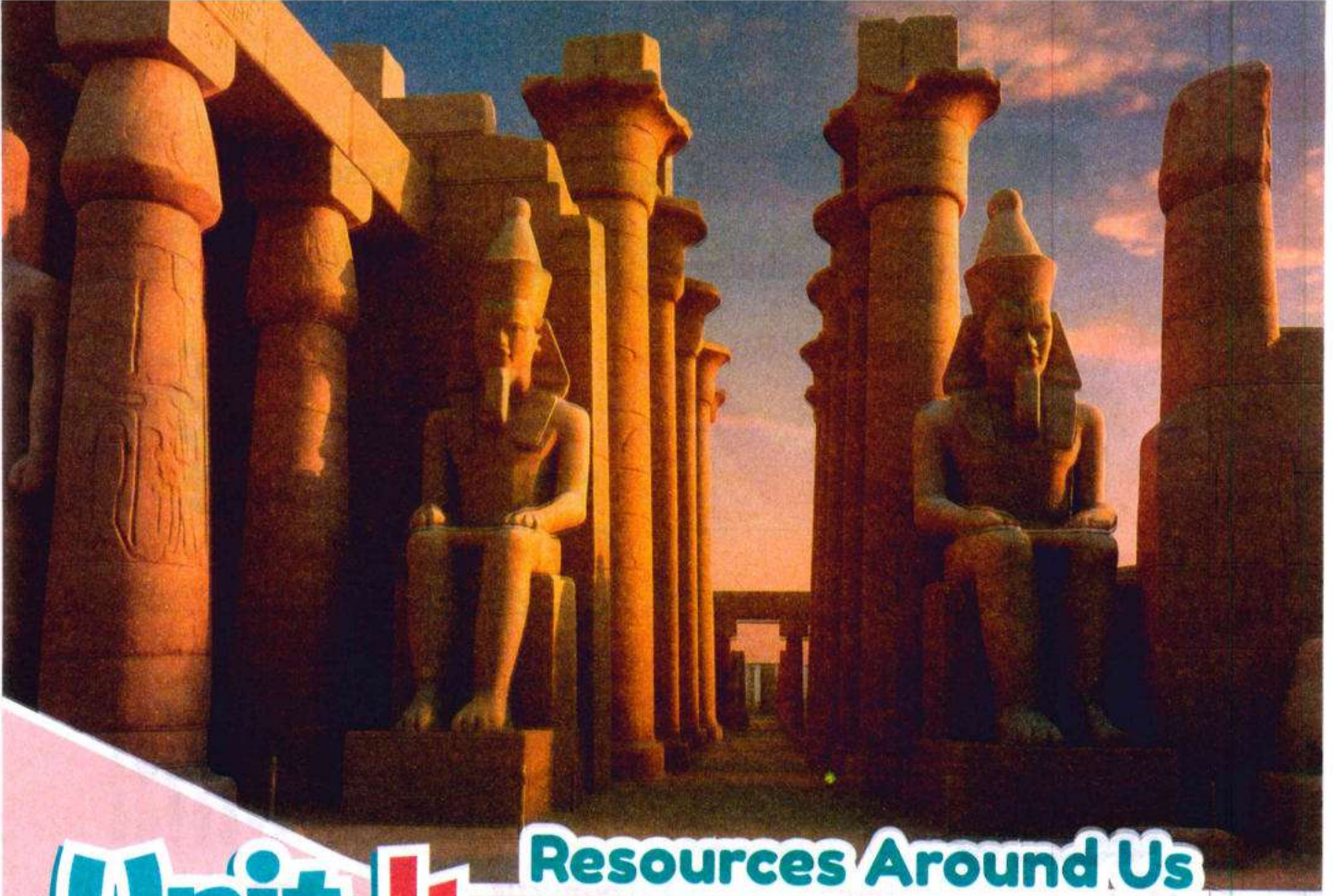
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 4 Resources Around Us

الموارد من حولنا

Learning Outcomes



Listening

- Identify key facts in short texts about materials and energy.
- Follow conversations about real life topics.
- Identify specific information using context clues and key vocabulary.
- Identify long and short /u/and/u:/



Speaking

- Talk about materials used in Egypt.
- Share ideas with a partner about how to save energy.
- Express opinions and give advice using modal verbs



Reading

- Differentiate between natural and man-made resources in an informational text
- Identify facts, details, and main ideas in a short passage.
- Answer WH-questions and complete tasks based on reading.



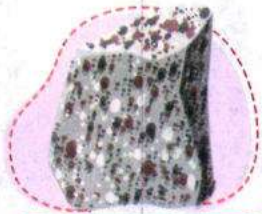
Writing

- Write a fact file.
- Use modal verbs correctly (**must, mustn't, should, shouldn't**) in writing.
- Plan and organize a research using clear steps.



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



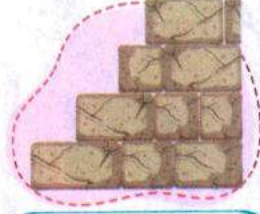
granite

الجرانيت



gold

ذهب



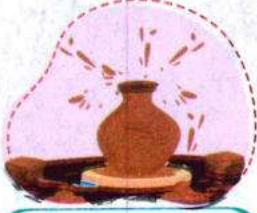
bricks

قوالب طوب



colored stones

أحجار ملونة



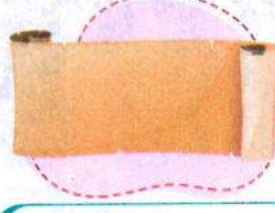
clay

طين



linen

كتان



papyrus

ورق البردي



pots

أواني



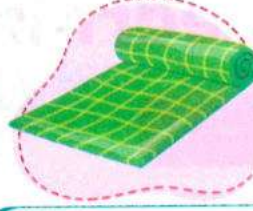
stone

حجر



wood

خشب



cloth

قماش



sculptures

منحوتات



mummy

مومياء



amulet

تميمة



flax

نبات الكتان



temple

معبد

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

museum	متحف	wool	صوف
statues	تماثيل	scroll	لُفافة
jar	برطمان - جرة	shape (n)	شكل
buildings	مباني	wrapped	ملفوف
jewelry	مجوهرات	Ancient Egyptian Culture	الثقافة المصرية القديمة

Adjectives

صفات

ancient	قديم	soft	ناعم
cool	رائع	amazing	رائع - مذهش
unbelievable	لا يصدق	interesting	شيق
colorful	ملون	natural	طبيعي
strong	قوي	useful	نافع - مفيد
fascinating	مذهل	modern	حديث - معاصر

Expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

work on something	للقيام بشيء	read about	يقرأ عن
from a long time ago	قديمًا (منذ زمن بعيد)	carved from	منحوتة من
just like	تمامًا كما	used for	تستخدم لـ
That's amazing!	هذا مذهش!	It's unbelievable...	لا يُصدّق
It's so cool!	إنه رائع!	I saw a picture of	رأيت صورة لـ - عن
lasted thousands of years	استمر لآلاف السنين	still used today	مازال يستخدم اليوم

Definitions تعريفات

material	something used to make things
survive	to continue to exist for a long time
ancient	very old; from a long time ago
decorate	to make something look nice or beautiful
wrapped	something covered by putting material or cloth around it
modern	from recent times; not old

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
believe	يعتقد / يؤمن	believed	believed
carve	ينحت	carved	carved
last	يستمر / يدوم	lasted	lasted
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
shape	يشكل / يصوغ	shaped	shaped
survive	ينجو / يبقى على قيد الحياة	survived	survived
wrap	يلف / يغلف	wrapped	wrapped

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
have	يملك - لديه	had	had
know	يعرف	knew	known
mean	يعني	meant	meant
read	يقرأ	read	read
see	يرى	saw	seen
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn



Listen and learn



Nour : Hey Omar! Are you working on the history project?

نور : مرحبًا يا عمرا هل تعمل على مشروع مادة التاريخ؟

Omar : Yes! I'm reading about materials the ancient Egyptians used. It's so cool. They used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and even gold!

عمر : نعم! أقرأ عن المواد التي استخدمها المصريون القدماء. إنه أمر رائع! لقد استخدموا الحجر، والطين، والبردي، والكتان، والخشب، وحتى الذهب!

Nour : That's amazing! I saw a picture of a papyrus scroll in a museum. It's unbelievable how long that material could survive! هذا مذهش! رأيت صورة لفافة ورق البردي في متحف. لا يُصدق كم من الوقت يمكن أن يبقى هذا النوع من المواد!

Omar : I know! And some materials are still used today. Stone is used in modern buildings—just like they used it for pyramids and temples.

عمر : أعلم! وبعض هذه المواد ما زالت تُستخدم حتى اليوم. الحجر يُستخدم في المباني الحديثة - تمامًا كما استخدموه في بناء الأهرامات والمعابد.

Nour : And statues! I love how they carved huge statues from granite. We still use stone today for sculptures and buildings.

نور : والتماثيل! أحب كيف كانوا ينحتون تماثيل ضخمة من الجرانيت. ما زلنا نستخدم الحجر اليوم في المنحوتات والمباني.

Omar : And linen! It's made from flax. Ancient Egyptians wore it every day—and even wrapped mummies in it.

عمر : والكتان! يُصنع من نبات الكتان. كان المصريون القدماء يرتدونه يوميًا - وحتى كانوا يلفون به المومياوات.

Nour : My grandma has a linen dress. It's soft, cool, and simple.

نور : جدتي تملك فستانًا من الكتان. إنه ناعم، و"لطيف"، وبسيط.

Omar : Clay is another interesting one. They made pots, jars, bricks—and small statues and amulets too!

عمر : الطين أيضًا من المواد الرائعة. كانوا يصنعون منه الأواني والجرار والطوب - وحتى التماثيل الصغيرة والتماائم.

Nour : Amulets? You mean, like small objects people believed could protect them?

نور : التماائم؟ تقصد الأشياء الصغيرة التي كان الناس يعتقدون أنها تحميهم؟

Omar : Exactly! Some were shaped like animals. They used gold and small colorful stones to make jewelry.

عمر : بالضبط! بعضها كان على شكل حيوانات. كانوا يستخدمون الذهب والأحجار الملونة الصغيرة لصنع المجوهرات.

Nour : These materials are natural, strong, and useful. That's why they lasted thousands of years. Ancient Egyptian culture is really fascinating.

نور : هذه المواد طبيعية، وقوية، ومفيدة. ولهذا السبب استمرت لآلاف السنين. الثقافة المصرية القديمة خلابة حقًا.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

colorful - project - linen - museum - papyrus

For our project, we are learning about Ancient Egyptian culture. I read that Egyptians used ① to write messages and ② to make clothes. Last weekend, I visited a ③ and saw a real papyrus scroll and linen dress. Their houses were large and their temples were ④ It was amazing to see how people lived long ago and how their culture is still remembered today.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians used a plant called flax to make
 a) cotton b) wood c) wool d) linen
2. They carved big statues from a hard stone called
 a) clay b) granite c) papyrus d) limestone
3. Omar is working on a project in which he studies more about the Ancient Egyptians.
 a) science b) math c) history d) geography
4. Papyrus is a writing material that can last for a very time.
 a) short b) long c) few d) tall
5. Ancient Egyptians used clay to make
 a) clothes b) pots c) jewelry d) wrapping
6. To make something look nice or beautiful means to it.
 a) survive b) design c) wrap d) decorate
7. They used to make valuable ornaments and jewelry.
 a) gold b) flax c) clay d) linen
8. Ancient Egyptians wore a small object around their neck to protect themselves. It is called a/an
 a) wool b) clay c) amulet d) wrap
9. A/An is a body of a dead person kept in linen.
 a) amulet b) mummy c) temple d) cloth
10. Their dead bodies were carefully wrapped in
 a) cloth c) gold c) wood d) papyrus

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

The ancient Egyptians used many **amazing** materials. They built big statues from granite and made bricks of clay. For writing, they used papyrus, which is a material made from a plant that grows near the Nile River. This material was strong and could last a very long time. For clothes, they used linen, a light material perfect for the hot weather, which they made from the flax plant. They also used gold and colored stones to make beautiful jewelry. These materials show how creative and skilled the Ancient Egyptians were.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The word "**amazing**" in the text means
 a) bad b) terrible c) wonderful d) boring
2. They used gold and colored stones to make
 a) gold b) jewelry c) papyrus d) granite

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did the Ancient Egyptians use for writing? ►
4. What materials did the Ancient Egyptians use to build statues and bricks? ►
5. What is linen made from? ►

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. Egyptians - materials - **What** - use - did - ancient? ?
2. gold - beautiful - made - from - jewelry - **They**.
 ►
3. past - papyrus - for - used - in - writing - **Egyptians** - the.
 ►
4. from - statues - big - made - granite - **They**.
 ►

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. the ancient egyptians used many materials. ►
2. Where did nour see the papyrus scroll ►
3. they made jewelry from gold and colored stones ►
4. what is omar working on? ►

6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Ancient Egyptian Materials"

Ideas to help you:

- What materials did they use for writing? ► Did these materials help them?
- What materials did they use for statues?

Lesson 2

Let's Use Energy Wisely!

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



energy

طاقة



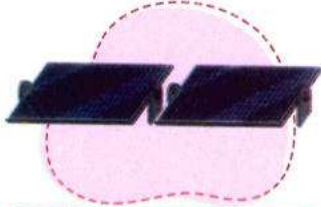
solar power

الطاقة الشمسية



pollute

يُلَوِّث



solar panels

ألواح شمسية



harm

يضر - ضرر



climate change

تغير المناخ

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

electricity

كهرباء

fridge

ثلاجة

wisely

بحكمة

difference

فرق - تأثير

solar

شمسي

energy heroes

أبطال الطاقة

wind

رياح

charge

يشحن

sunshine

ضوء الشمس

fuel

وقود

planet

كوكب

walking

المشي

save energy

يوفر الطاقة

biking

ركوب الدراجة

devices

أجهزة

distances

مسافات

waste (n.) (v.)

نفايات - يُهدر

Unit 4

Adjectives

صفات

endless

لا نهاية له - غير محدود

wise

حكيم

healthy

صحي

right

صحيح - مناسب

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

by turning off

بإيقاف تشغيل

use wisely

يستخدم بحكمة

when not in use

عندما لا يستخدم

light our homes

نضيئ منازلنا

keeps us healthy

تبقىنا بصحة جيدة

make a difference

يحدث فرق

can harm the Earth

يمكن أن يضر الأرض

from nature

من الطبيعة

with fuel

مع الوقود

for cooking

من أجل الطهي

on the air

على الهواء

Definitions تعريفات

solar power

Energy that comes from sunlight.

solar panels

Devices that change sunlight into electricity.

pollute

To make something dirty or unsafe, especially the air, water, or land.

protect

Caring for something so you don't make mistakes or cause harm.

climate

The usual weather in a place over a long time.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

p.p.

affect

يؤثر

affected

affected

bike

يركب الدراجة

biked

biked

Present		Past	p.p.
charge	يشحن	charged	charged
close	يغلق	closed	closed
harm	يؤذي	harmed	harmed
pollute	يلوث	polluted	polluted
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
save	يوفر / ينقذ	saved	saved
turn	يدير / يشغل	turned	turned
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
waste	يهدر	wasted	wasted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
come	يأتي	came	come
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept
light	يضيئ	lit	lit

Read and learn

What are some ways we can save electricity at home?



Energy is something we all need every day—to light our homes, cook, watch TV, and charge our phones. In Egypt, we use electricity, gas, and **solar power**. But energy is not endless, so we must use it wisely.

الطاقة هي شيء نحتاجه جميعًا كل يوم - لإنارة منازلنا، والطهي، ومشاهدة التلفزيون، وشحن هواتفنا. في مصر، نستخدم الكهرباء، والغاز، والطاقة الشمسية. لكن الطاقة ليست بلا نهاية، لذلك يجب علينا استخدامها بحكمة.

Some energy comes from nature, like solar and wind, which are clean and don't **pollute**. Egypt has lots of sunshine, so using more **solar panels** saves money and helps the planet.

بعض الطاقة تأتي من الطبيعة، مثل الطاقة الشمسية والرياح، وهي طاقة نظيفة ولا تلوث. مصر لديها الكثير من أشعة الشمس، لذا فإن استخدام المزيد من الألواح الشمسية يوفر المال ويساعد الكوكب.

Other energy types, like oil and gas, can **harm** the Earth. We should save energy by turning off lights and devices when not in use, closing the fridge door quickly, and using the right size pot for cooking. Cars and buses use fuel which pollutes the air. Walking or biking short distances also saves energy and keeps us healthy.

أنواع أخرى من الطاقة، مثل النفط والغاز، يمكن أن تضر بالأرض. يجب علينا توفير الطاقة بإطفاء الأنوار والأجهزة عند عدم استخدامها، وإغلاق باب الثلاجة بسرعة، واستخدام القدر المناسب للطهي. تستخدم السيارات والحافلات الوقود الذي يلوث الهواء. المشي أو ركوب الدراجة لمسافات قصيرة يساهم أيضًا في توفير الطاقة ويحافظ على صحتنا.

Wasting energy causes **climate** change, which affects animals and their homes. Small daily actions can make a big difference. Together, we can **protect** our country and planet—we should all be Energy Heroes!

إهدار الطاقة يسبب تغير المناخ، مما يؤثر على الحيوانات ومواطنها. الإجراءات اليومية الصغيرة يمكن أن تحدث فرقًا كبيرًا. معًا، يمكننا حماية بلدنا وكوكبنا - يجب أن نكون جميعًا أبطال الطاقة!

1) Read the words in **bold** and write:



1. To make something dirty or unsafe, especially the air, water, or land. (.....)
2. Caring for something so you don't make mistakes or cause harm. (.....)
3. The usual weather in a place over a long time. (.....)



2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We use to get energy from the sun.
a) wind turbines b) greenhouses c) fridges d) solar panels
2. Gases from cars and buses can the air.
a) pollute b) clean c) charge d) protect
3. Don't water when you brush your teeth.
a) use b) harm c) waste d) close
4. We must the Earth from pollution.
a) forget b) protect c) use d) leave

Grammar Focus



Modal Verbs: Must/ Mustn't/ Should/ Shouldn't

1 **Must:** يجب أن - عليك أن

subject + must + base verb

- We use **"must"** when something is necessary or very important.
نستخدم كلمة **"must"** عندما يكون شيء ما ضروريًا أو مهمًا جدًا.

Example:

- ▶ You **must** listen to your teacher in class.
- ▶ We **must** be quiet in the library.
- ▶ You **must** do your homework.

2 **Mustn't:** لا يجب أن - ممنوع أن

subject + mustn't + base verb

- **"Mustn't"** is the short way of saying "must not." We use it to show that something is forbidden or not allowed.
تعبير **"Mustn't"** هو اختصار لعبارة **"must not"**. نستخدمه للدلالة على أن شيئًا ما ممنوع أو غير مسموح به.

Example:

- ▶ You **mustn't** run in the school hallway.
- ▶ You **mustn't** talk during a test.
- ▶ You **mustn't** touch the hot stove.

3 Should: يجب أن- من الأفضل أن

subject + should + base verb

- **Should** is used when you think something is a good idea or to give advice.

تستخدم كلمة "Should" عندما تعتقد أن شيئاً ما فكرة جيدة أو لتقديم النصيحة.

Example:

- ▶ You **should** study for your test.
- ▶ He **should** apologize for being late.
- ▶ We **should** eat more vegetables.

4 Shouldn't: لا يجب أن- من الأفضل ألا

subject + shouldn't + base verb

- **Shouldn't** is a contraction for "**should not**." It is used when you think something is a bad idea or the wrong thing to do.

"Shouldn't" هو اختصار لعبارة "**should not**". نستخدمه عندما تعتقد أن شيئاً ما فكرة سيئة أو تصرف خاطئ.

Example:

- ▶ You **shouldn't** watch too much TV.
- ▶ She **shouldn't** forget her keys.
- ▶ They **shouldn't** sleep late.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should always energy.
a) waste b) pollute c) save d) harm
2. comes from sunlight and can be used to power homes.
a) Energy b) Solar power c) Electricity d) Fuel
3. Using cars too much can the air.
a) harm b) pollute c) save energy d) cook
4. Solar give us clean electricity.
a) winds b) wires c) panels d) turbines
5. Walking or short distances helps the planet and keeps us healthy.
a) sunshine b) cooking c) biking d) electricity
6. You mustn't these electrical wires.
a) touch b) touches c) touching d) touched
7. She use water wisely.
a) should b) mustn't c) can't d) wouldn't
8. We must use energy so we don't waste it.
a) endlessly b) wisely c) quickly d) harm
9. They pollute the river with waste.
a) should b) mustn't c) can d) will
10. You eat too much candy because it's bad for your teeth.
a) shouldn't b) should c) can d) must

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

solar panel - energy - protect - planet - pollution

Protecting the planet is everyone's responsibility. We must all help to
 ① the Earth from any danger. Using a ② is a
 great way to produce electricity at home. If we all work together, we can
 make our ③ healthier. Small actions can help our climate.
 We all have to save ④ Protecting energy today ensures a
 brighter tomorrow.



3 Complete the following sentences with (must/mustn't):

1. You cross the street when the light is red.
2. We wear a uniform at school.
3. You touch electrical wires.
4. You listen to the teacher carefully.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Many people today use solar power at home to produce electricity. A solar panel collects sunlight and changes it into energy without harming nature. Using solar energy helps save electricity and reduces the need for harmful fuels. People should also turn off electric devices when they are not in use and avoid wasting energy. Small actions, like closing the fridge quickly or using the right pot for cooking, help a lot. Saving energy protects the planet, reduces pollution, and keeps the environment clean. Everyone can help by being careful with energy use every day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Many people today use at home to produce electricity.
a) wind power b) solar power c) gas d) coal.
2. Small actions, like closing the fridge quickly or using the right for cooking, help a lot.
a) pot b) table c) cup d) spoon.

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why is using solar energy helpful for the environment?

▶

4. Name two small actions that help save energy.

▶

5. What does saving energy do for the environment?

▶

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. shouldn't - You - energy - waste - at - home.

▶

2. solar - comes - Some energy - nature, - like - from - and wind

▶

3. wisely - should - use - electricity - We - everywhere.

▶

4. mustn't - Children - near - play - wires - electrical.

▶

5. always - save - to - We - try - should - energy.

▶

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We must (protecting) the planet from harm.

2. (Mustn't) we turn off the fridge when not in use?

3. You mustn't (touches) electrical wires.

4. We (not pollute) our water or air.

5. You mustn't (came) late to class.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. should we use wind turbines that produce clean electricity

▶

2. the sun gives us light and heat

▶

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"How to protect our environment"

▶ planet - electricity - wind turbines

.....

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



oil

نפט



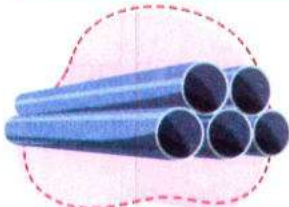
natural resources

موارد طبيعية



iron

حديد



steel

صلب



natural gas

غاز طبيعي



minerals

معادن



rock

صخرة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
soil	تربة	Eastern Desert	الصحراء الشرقية
heating	التدفئة	Sinai	سيناء
future	مستقبل	gifts	هدايا
development	تنمية - تطوير	country	دولة - بلد
resources	موارد	liquid	سائل

Adjectives

صفات

valuable	قيم / ثمين	beautiful	جميل
shiny	لامع	different	مختلف
deep	عميق	important	مهم

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

build a strong future

يبني مستقبلاً قوياً

a lot of

الكثير من

make jewelry

يصنع المجوهرات

to use wisely

أن يستخدم بحكمة

to grow and develop

لتنمو والتطور

long ago

منذ زمن بعيد

bring money to

يجلب المال لـ

under the ground

تحت الأرض

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

p.p.

call	يتصل	called	called
contain	يحتوي على	contained	contained
develop	يتطور	developed	developed
save	يوفر	saved	saved

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

p.p.

build	يبني	built	built
do	يفعل	did	done
find	يجد	found	found
go	يذهب	went	gone
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
take	يأخذ	took	taken
think	يفكر	thought	thought



Read and learn



Egypt has many valuable things under the ground. We call these things minerals. They are very important for our country. Egypt has a lot of oil, rocks, and metals. We find oil deep under the ground, especially in the Western Desert and Sinai. Oil is a black liquid. Egypt sells oil to other countries. This brings money to Egypt.



تمتلك مصر العديد من الأشياء الثمينة تحت الأرض. نسمي هذه الأشياء "معادن". إنها مهمة جدًا لبلدنا. تمتلك مصر الكثير من النفط والصخور والمعادن. نجد النفط في أعماق الأرض، خاصة في الصحراء الغربية وسيناء. النفط هو سائل أسود. تبيع مصر النفط لدول أخرى، وهذا يجلب المال لمصر.

Egypt also has a lot of natural gas that we can use for cooking, heating, and making electricity for lights and TVs. Gold is a beautiful, yellow, shiny metal. Long ago, Ancient Egyptians used gold to make beautiful jewelry for kings and queens. Today, Egypt still finds gold in the Eastern Desert. Also, Egypt has iron in the Eastern Desert. Iron is a strong metal. We use iron to make steel. We use it to build big buildings and cars.

تمتلك مصر أيضًا الكثير من الغاز الطبيعي الذي يمكننا استخدامه للطهي والتدفئة وتوليد الكهرباء للأضواء وأجهزة التلفزيون. الذهب معدن جميل، أصفر، ولامع. منذ زمن بعيد، استخدم المصريون القدماء الذهب. لصنع مجوهرات جميلة للملوك والملكات. واليوم، لا تزال مصر تجد الذهب في الصحراء الشرقية. كما أن مصر لديها الحديد في الصحراء الشرقية. الحديد معدن قوي، ونحن نستخدمه لصنع الصلب. نستخدم الصلب لبناء المباني الكبيرة والسيارات.



The soil in Egypt contains different kinds of minerals which help plants grow big and strong. These natural resources help Egypt grow and develop. By using these minerals wisely, Egypt can build a strong future for everyone.

تحتوي التربة في مصر على أنواع مختلفة من المعادن التي تساعد النباتات على النمو لتصبح كبيرة وقوية. هذه الموارد الطبيعية تساعد مصر على النمو والتطور. وباستخدام هذه المعادن بحكمة، يمكن لمصر أن تبني مستقبلًا قويًا للجميع.

1) Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's Book

1. Oil is found in the air.
2. Egypt sells oil to other countries.
3. Natural gas helps heat food.
4. The Ancient Egyptians made jewelry from natural gas.
5. Natural resources helps plants grow better.
6. Steel is used for cars and buildings.

()
()
()
()
()
()

2) Answer the following questions:



Student's Book

1. What do we call the valuable things under the ground in Egypt?
2. Where do we find oil in Egypt?
3. How is the soil in Egypt?
4. Why are natural resources important for Egypt?

Pronunciation



Examples:

/u:/ - Long "oo" sound



The long "oo" sound is a vowel sound you hear in words like moon, food, and school. It's a long, low sound, similar to saying "you" without the "y" at the beginning.

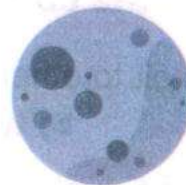
صوت 'oo' الطويل هو صوت علة (حرف متحرك) تسمعه في كلمات مثل moon و food و school. إنه صوت منخفض وممتد، يشبه نطق كلمة 'you' ولكن بدون حرف 'y' في البداية.



group



spoon



moon



food



boot



school



zoo

Examples:

/ʊ/ – Short “oo” sound



The short “oo” sound is a quick vowel sound heard in words like book, good, and foot. It’s different from the long “oo” sound in “moon” and “food” because it’s shorter.

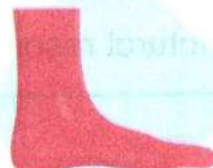
صوت "oo" القصير هو صوت علة (حرف متحرك) سريع تسمعه في كلمات مثل book و good و toof. يختلف عن صوت "oo" الطويل الموجود في كلمتي moon و food لأنه أقصر.



wood



look



foot



book



good



hook

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egypt sells oil to other countries. This brings to Egypt.
 a) money b) water c) jewelry d) gold

2. The Ancient Egyptians used gold to make
 a) steel b) cars c) jewelry d) buildings

3. We use iron to make
 a) oil b) steel c) gas d) fossil
4. The soil in Egypt contains minerals that help grow.
 a) cars b) plants c) buildings d) kings
5. Egypt has a lot of deep under the ground, which is black and used for fuel.
 a) iron b) gold c) oil d) jewelry
6. Natural can be found in the soil and rocks of Egypt.
 a) gifts b) jewelry c) resources d) liquid
7. Gold is a yellow, shiny that was very important in Ancient Egypt.
 a) rock b) plant c) liquid d) metal
8. The in Egypt are used to make jewelry, buildings, and other useful things.
 a) steel b) minerals c) liquid d) gifts

2

Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt has many valuable resources, including oil, rocks, and metals. Oil is found deep under the ground, especially in the Western Desert and Sinai. It is a black liquid that Egypt sells to other countries, bringing money to the country. In addition to oil, Egypt has a lot of natural gas. People use it for cooking, heating homes, and generating electricity for lights, TVs, and other devices. These resources are very important for Egypt's economy and daily life. By using them wisely, the country can benefit now and in the future while protecting the environment.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egypt sells oil to other countries to get
 a) food b) money c) cars d) rocks
2. The main idea of this text is about ".....".
 a) Ancient Egyptians b) Oil and Gas
 c) Gold d) Iron

B Answer the following questions:

3. What does Egypt have a lot of under the ground?

▶

4. What do we use natural gas for?

▶

5. What is the color and state of oil?

▶

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

money - gas - gold - iron - nickel

Egypt is rich in valuable resources found under the ground. Egypt has a lot of natural ① that we can use for cooking and heating. We use ② to make steel, which is a strong metal used for cars and buildings. Selling oil to other countries brings ③ to Egypt. Long ago, Ancient Egyptians used ④ to make beautiful jewelry for kings and queens.

4 Listen and circle the word that has the /u/ sound (as in 'look'):

1. food / book / group 2. spoon / foot / moon 3. good / true / juice

5 Listen and circle the word that has the /u:/ sound (as in 'spoon'):

1. wood / root / foot 2. glue / cook / look 3. moon / shook / hood

6 Correct the word(s) between brackets:

1. You (mustn't) be quiet in the library.
2. We (shouldn't) help our parents with the housework.
3. You (must) touch the hot stove.
4. He shouldn't (eating) so many sweets every day.
5. You should (doing) your homework before watching TV.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. minerals - valuable - Egypt - has - many.

▶

2. to - sell - we - countries - oil - Do - other?

▶ ?

3. is - beautiful - Gold - a - metal - and - expensive.

▶

4. Eastern Desert - in - find - We - iron - the.

▶

5. are - resources - natural - Egypt - in - There - a lot of.

▶

8 Punctuate the following:

1. gold is a beautiful yellow metal

▶

2. egypt sells oil to other countries

▶

3. what do we use natural gas for

▶

4. wow these minerals are amazing.

▶

9 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Natural resources in Egypt"



▶ gold - Western Desert - natural gas

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



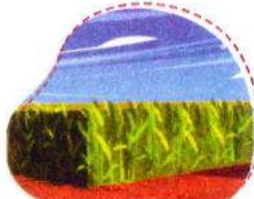
Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



High Dam

السد العالي



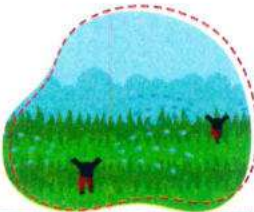
crops

محاصيل



huge

ضخم



irrigation

الري



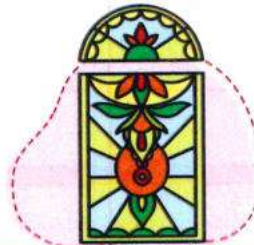
flood

فيضان



electricity

كهرباء



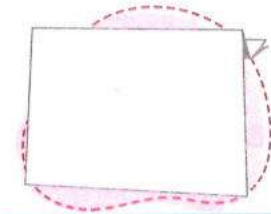
glass

زجاج



sand

رمال



paper

الورق



factories

مصانع



plastic

بلاستيك



drought

جفاف

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

man-made	من صنع الإنسان	huge	ضخم
research	بحث	resources	موارد
natural materials	مواد طبيعية	recycling	إعادة تدوير
accurate	دقيق	mirrors	مرايات
during	أثناء	officially	رسميًا
school supplies	أدوات المدرسة		

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

using natural materials	باستخدام مواد طبيعية	searching the internet	البحث على الإنترنت
the world around me	العالم من حولي	the world around me	العالم من حولي
is used to	يستخدم لـ	instead of	بدلاً من
recycling paper	إعادة تدوير الورق	help with	المساعدة في
keep for	الاحتفاظ بـ	across Egypt	في جميع أنحاء مصر
doing a project	عمل مشروع	made by	مصنوع بواسطة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
add	يضيف	added	added
bake	يخبز	baked	baked
check	يفحص	checked	checked
complete	يُكمل / يُتم	completed	completed
copy	ينسخ	copied	copied
explain	يشرح	explained	explained

Present		Past	PP
dry	يُجفف	dried	dried
organize	يُنظّم	organized	organized
print	يطبع	printed	printed
process	يُعالج / يُعدّل	processed	processed
recycle	يُعيد تدوير	recycled	recycled
reuse	يُعيد استخدام	reused	reused
share	يُشارك	shared	shared
solve	يحلّ	solved	solved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
find	يجد	found	found
give	يعطي	gave	given
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
hold	يمسك	held	held
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept
take	يأخذ	took	taken
write	يكتب	wrote	written



Read and learn

What do you think man-made resources are?



Hi! I'm Omar, and I'm doing a research project about man-made resources for my English class.

مرحبًا! أنا عمر، وأقوم بعمل بحث عن الموارد الصناعية لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية.



I started by reading a book and searching the internet with my dad.

بدأت بقراءة كتاب والبحث على الإنترنت مع والدي.

I wrote facts in my notebook and printed pictures to help explain.

كتبْتُ الحقائق في دفتر الملاحظات وطبعْتُ صورًا للمساعدة في الشرح.

Man-made resources are things people create using natural materials. For example, plastic is made from oil and used for bottles, toys, and school supplies.

Glass is made from sand and used in windows, mirrors, and cups.

الموارد الصناعية هي أشياء يصنعها الإنسان باستخدام مواد طبيعية. على سبيل المثال، البلاستيك يُصنع من النفط ويُستخدم في صناعة الزجاجات والألعاب والمستلزمات المدرسية. أما الزجاج فيُصنع من الرمل ويُستخدم في النوافذ والمرايا والأكواب.

One interesting resource I learned about is bricks, made by mixing clay and water, then dried or baked. They are used to build houses, schools, and walls.

ومن الموارد المثيرة التي تعلمتُ عنها: الطوب، الذي يُصنع بخلط الطين والماء ثم يُجفف أو يوضع في الفرن، ويُستخدم في بناء المنازل والمدارس والجدران.

Paper is made from trees and processed in factories for writing and reading. People also recycle paper to make notebooks and newspapers. الورق يُصنع من الأشجار ويُعالج في المصانع للكتابة والقراءة، كما أن الناس يعيدون تدوير الورق لصنع الدفاتر والصحف.

To complete my project, I drew pictures of each resource and shared helpful tips, such as recycling plastic, reusing paper, and using cloth bags instead of plastic ones.

لإكمال بحثي، قمتُ برسم صور لكل مورد، وشاركت نصائح مفيدة، مثل: إعادة تدوير البلاستيك، وإعادة استخدام الورق، واستخدام الأكياس القماشية بدلًا من البلاستيكية.

Doing research was an important part of my work because it helped me understand new ideas, find accurate information, and learn more about the world around me.

كان البحث جزءًا مهمًا من عملي لأنه ساعدني على فهم أفكار جديدة، وإيجاد معلومات دقيقة، وتعلُّم المزيد عن العالم من حولي.

Read and answer:

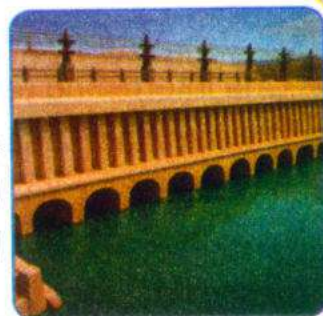
1. What project did Omar work on?
2. Where did Omar find information for his research?
3. Which man-made material did Omar include in his project?
4. Why is research important?
5. Which piece of information from the text is new to you?



Read and learn

The High Dam

السد العالي



What is the High Dam? ما هو السد العالي؟

The High Dam is a huge wall that crosses the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It holds a large lake called Lake Nasser. The dam stops the river from flooding and keeps water for people to use during the year.

السد العالي هو جدار ضخيم يمر عبر نهر النيل في أسوان بمصر. يحجز خلفه بحيرة كبيرة تُسمى بحيرة ناصر. يمنع السد فيضان النهر، ويحتفظ بالمياه لأجل الناس لاستخدامها خلال العام.

Why did Egyptians build it?

لماذا بناه المصريون؟

They built the High Dam to solve problems with flooding and drought. They also wanted to give people clean electricity and help farmers grow more crops with regular water.

بُني السد العالي لحل مشاكل الفيضانات والجفاف. كما أرادوا توفير كهرباء نظيفة للناس، ومساعدة المزارعين على زراعة المزيد من المحاصيل باستخدام مياه منتظمة.

When did Egyptians build it?

متى بناه المصريون؟

Egyptians built the High Dam in Aswan between 1960 and 1970. It was officially completed and opened in 1970. It took ten years to build. Now, it helps Egypt with water and electricity every day.

بنى المصريون السد العالي في أسوان بين عامي 1960 و1970. تم الانتهاء منه رسميًا وافتتاحه عام 1970. استغرق بناؤه عشر سنوات. والآن، يساعد السد مصر في توفير المياه والكهرباء يوميًا.

How does The High Dam help people? كيف يساعد السد العالي الناس؟

The High Dam helps people in many ways. Farmers use the water for irrigation, so they can grow vegetables, fruits, and grains all year. The dam also sends electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories across Egypt. It protects cities from dangerous floods, and it makes sure people have water even when the river is low.

يساعد السد العالي الناس بعدة طرق. يستخدم المزارعون مياهه للري، مما يمكنهم من زراعة الخضروات والفواكه والحبوب طوال العام. كما يزود السد المنازل والمدارس والمستشفيات والمصانع في جميع أنحاء مصر بالكهرباء. ويحمي السد المدن من الفيضانات الخطيرة، ويضمن توفر المياه حتى عندما ينخفض منسوب النهر.



Writing Notes:

Here are some tips for making a research:

نصائح لإجراء بحث:

1 Choose your topic.

اختر موضوعك.

2 Ask simple questions, What is it? Where does it come from? etc.

اطرح أسئلة بسيطة، مثل: ما هو؟ من أين يأتي؟ إلخ.

3 Use different sources like: school book, search safe websites, or ask an adult.

استخدم مصادر مختلفة مثل: كتب المدرسة، أو ابحث في مواقع إلكترونية آمنة، أو اسأل شخصاً بالغاً.

4 Write short notes in your own words.

اكتب ملاحظات قصيرة بكلماتك الخاصة.

5 Organize your ideas.

نظم أفكارك.

6 Add pictures or drawings.

أضف صوراً أو رسومات.

7 Check spelling, grammar, and punctuation mistakes

تحقق من أخطاء الإملاء والنحو وعلامات الترقيم.



Language Notes:



Made from vs. Made of

1 Made of

- Use: When the material used is clearly visible and hasn't changed its original form.
- عندما لا يتغير شكل المادة المصنوع منها الشيء.

Example:

▶ The table is made of wood

2 Made from

- Use: When the material used has changed form and you can't easily recognize it anymore.
- عندما يتغير شكل المادة المصنوع منها الشيء.

Example:

▶ Paper is made from wood

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Aswan helps control the Nile River.
a) High Dam b) flood c) drought d) sand
- Farmers grow many different
a) factories b) electricity c) crops d) tombs
- The Great Pyramid is a ancient structure.
a) tiny b) huge c) small d) modern
- is important for farming in dry areas.
a) Irrigation b) Glass c) Paper d) Sand
- A means there is no rain for a long time.
a) flood b) drought c) dam d) factory

2 Fill in the blank with either **made from** or **made of**:

1. This cake is flour, sugar, and eggs.
2. The table is wood.
3. Plastic is oil.
4. The cup is glass.
5. Paper is wood pulp.
6. My sweater is wool.
7. Cheese is milk.
8. The wall is bricks.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

save - irrigation - huge - small - crops

Egypt has many important constructions that help the country. The Aswan High Dam is a very ① Egyptian structure. It is a man-made project built on the Nile River. It helps to ② Egypt from flooding to prevent damage to villages. The Dam also helps with ③ for growing many ④ It's a key part of Egypt's resources.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Many useful things around us are made from natural materials. For example, glass is made from sand, which is a common resource found in many parts of the world. Paper, another essential material, comes from trees. Ancient Egyptians used clay to make bricks for their homes and other buildings. They also created beautiful jewelry and statues from gold and colored stones. Understanding these materials and their origins helps us appreciate the world around us and consider the importance of recycling.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Ancient Egyptians used clay to make (wood - plastic - glass - bricks) for their homes.

2. Ancient Egyptians created beautiful jewelry and statues from gold and (colored stones - solar panels - natural areas - golden medals).

B Answer the following questions:

3. What is glass made from? ▶
 4. What does paper come from? ▶
 5. Give a suitable title for the text. ▶

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. The - helps - High - Dam - with - crops - farmers
 ▶
 2. man-made - amazing - structures - Dams - are.
 ▶
 3. environment - are - materials - for - Natural - the - good.
 ▶
 4. Research - us - information - about - gives - things.
 ▶

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. farmers depend on good irrigation to grow healthy crops
 ▶
 2. where is glass often made in
 ▶

7 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Saving Energy"



▶ turn off - saving bulbs - electricity

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 4

Main Vocabulary

colored stones	أحجار ملونة	climate change	تغير المناخ
bricks	قوالب طوب	oil	نפט
gold	ذهب	natural resources	موارد طبيعية
granite	الجرانيت	iron	حديد
clay	طين	steel	صلب
linen	كتان	natural gas	غاز طبيعي
papyrus	ورق البردي	minerals	معادن
pots	أواني	rock	صخرة
stone	حجر	high dam	السد العالي
wood	خشب	crops	محاصيل
cloth	قماش	huge	ضخم
sculptures	منحوتات	irrigation	الري
mummy	مومياء	flood	فيضان
amulet	تميمة	electricity	كهرباء
flax	نبات الكتان	glass	زجاج
energy	طاقة	sand	رمال
solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	paper	الورق
pollute	يلوث	factories	مصانع
solar panels	ألواح طاقة شمسية	plastic	بلاستيك
harm	يضر - يؤذي	drought	جفاف

Language In Use



can - can't - able to



Modal Verbs: Must/ Mustn't/ Should/ Shouldn't

① Must: يجب أن - عليك أن

▶ You **must** listen to your teacher in class.

2 Mustn't: لا يجب أن - ممنوع أن

▶ You **mustn't** run in the school hallway.

3 Should: يجب أن- من الأفضل أن

▶ You **should** study for your test.

4 Shouldn't: لا يجب أن- من الأفضل ألا

▶ You **shouldn't** watch too much TV.



Dictation:

ricity	مهم
fuel	برطمان
difference	لفافه
energy heroes	مجوهرات
endless	مفيد
charge	لا يصدق
ancient	ينجو
wrapped	يحمي
natural	يغلف
fascinating	مسافات
affect	يهدر
minerals	صحي
rock	يحدث الفارق
iron	الواح شمسيه
resources	فيضان
development	جفاف
gifts	مسؤوليات
valuable	الصحراء الغربية
drought	يحتوي علي
sand	يتطور

Writing Skills

Your garden

I care for my garden, a beautiful environment with lots of herbs. The sunlight helps my plants, like ginger and sage, grow. I remove any harmful weeds so they stay healthy. The flavor of the herbs is incredible, and they make my food so tasty. I water my plants every day. They make me very happy.

Visiting a new place

Last weekend, my family went to Qaroun Lake. My parents and I prepared well for our little adventure. The story took place at the lake, which was very big and beautiful. We saw lots of birds and enjoyed the fresh air. The lake is well known for its history. It was a perfect day for our family trip.



Search

From : wael2@yahoo.com
To : sami.a@yahoo.com
Subject : invitation to visit Egypt.

Hi Sami,

The weather in Egypt is great all year! It's usually sunny and warm with a clear sky, so we play outside a lot. On very hot days, we find shade to cool down. Sometimes it gets cold, and we see dark clouds and a little rainy weather, but the sun comes back fast.

Your friend,
Wael

Caring for Plants

To have a healthy plant, you need to give it a lot of water. It's also important to pull out all the weeds that try to grow around it. I grow different herbs in my garden. I give my plants special food called natural fertilizer to help them grow strong. This keeps my whole garden happy!

Life around the Nile

To have a healthy plant, you need to give it a lot of water. It's also important to pull out all the weeds that try to grow around it. I grow different herbs in my garden. I give my plants special food called natural fertilizer to help them grow strong. This keeps my whole garden happy!

Protecting our Earth

We all can help to protect our Earth. One of the easiest things we can do is to recycle paper and plastic bottles. When we recycle, it stops pollution from harming our air and water. This simple and nice change in our daily routines can save our environment. These small actions help keep our planet clean and safe, creating a better place for everyone to live.



Practice 7 on Unit 4

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Total

60

1

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

science - temples - protect - electricity - survive

Alaa : Hi, Youssef. You look busy. What are you reading?

Youssef : Hi, Alaa! I'm reading about Ancient Egypt. Did you know they used clay and gold to build ①

Alaa : Wow, that's interesting! I also read about natural things that help us ②, like clean water and food.

Youssef : Yes! But nowadays we also use other resources to survive, like ③ to light our homes.

Alaa : That's true. And do you remember the ④ lesson about useful things around us?

Youssef : Yes! And we should also ⑤ our planet by using energy wisely.

2

Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. bricks - papyrus - fridge - granite

2. wind turbines - solar panel - temple - greenhouses

3. granite - silver - gold - walk

4. crops - irrigate - plants - habitat

3

Choose the correct answer:

1. Papyrus was used by ancient Egyptians to (write - grow - cook - sleep).

2. We must (save - harm - waste - give) energy to protect nature.

3. The High Dam helps with (sleeping - irrigation - learning - recycling).

4. Drought happens when there is no (sun - wind - rain - rubbish) for a long time.

6. We must (**study** - put - grow - check) our devices to see if they are working.
7. People (**should** - shouldn't - have - need) use electricity wisely at homes.
8. Students must (**studies** - study - studying - studied) the lessons well.
9. Every community (**has** - must - mustn't - have) work together to keep their community clean.
10. (**Must** - Should - Are - Does) I use energy-saving bulbs at home?

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Energy is very important in our daily life. We use it to light our homes and power our devices. There are many types of energy, such as solar power and electricity. Solar panels help us to use the sun's energy. If we waste energy, it can **harm** our planet. That's why we must use energy wisely and protect nature. ,

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of "**harm**" is (**protect** - affect - waste - break).
2. Solar power is a type of (**material** - energy - planet - junk).

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why do we use energy?
▶
4. What helps us use the sun's energy?
▶
5. Why should we use energy wisely?
▶

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. ancient - made - **They** - temples - from - granite - other - metals - and.
▶

2. wisely - we - energy - use - **Should**?

?

3. High - Dam - **The** - floods - prevents - Egypt - in.

4. turn off - **You** - the - lights - should - when - you leave.

5. planet - the - help - to - **We** - energy - save

6

Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Clean Energy"



► solar power - protect - wisely

Handwriting practice area with 15 horizontal lines for writing a paragraph.

Practice 8 on Unit 4



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Solar power is a smart choice because it does not (**cost money** - use wind - pollute the air - need water).
2. Solar panels are used to (**clean the air** - grow food - make electricity - protect animals).
3. Using clean energy helps slow down (**climate change** - time - car traffic - rainstorms).
4. Clean energy is better for (**only people** - the future and nature - factories only - making more pollution).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Scientists do (**research** - bricks - papers - shopping) to learn more about man-made resources.
2. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to (**cook food** - build houses - write and draw - make clothes).
3. We should be (**careful** - repel - cloth - careless) when using electricity.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

flood - electricity - better - huge - dam

Egypt has many important projects that help its people and economy. The High Dam in Egypt is a ① structure that helps protect the country from ② and drought. It stores water for irrigation, which helps farmers grow more crops. The dam also produces ③ for homes and factories. Without the High Dam, many families would not have enough water or electricity. It helps people live ④ every day and supports the whole country's economy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Today, many people use solar panels to save energy and protect the environment. Solar panels are placed on rooftops where they collect solar power from the sun. This energy is clean and does not cause pollution like electricity made from burning fossil fuels. Using too much electricity from regular sources can harm the air and increase pollution.

To help even more, we should turn off lights, computers, and other devices when they are not in use. Saving energy in these ways helps keep the planet clean and healthy for everyone now and in the future.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Solar panels are placed on (walls - windows - rooftops - fridges).
2. Using clean energy helps (harm - decorate - pollute - protect) the environment.

B Answer the following questions:

3. What do solar panels collect?
▶
4. When should we turn off devices?
▶
5. How does saving energy help the planet?
▶

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences:

1. grow - The - helps - crops - Dam - to - High - farmers.
▶
2. Egyptians - made - bricks - clay - of - Ancient.
▶

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The friends started their work with a notebook, a camera, and curious eyes. ()
2. Farida took photos of the water problems around the school. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. What reason did Noor give for caring about water? ▶
4. What did one of Farida's posters say? ▶

7

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. We (should) waste energy.
2. People must (keeping) their homes clean.

8

Punctuate the following:

1. The high dam gives electricity to egyptian homes and factories.
▶
2. recycling helps us save natural materials and resources
▶

9

Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Man-made resources around us"



▶ dam - crops - electricity

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 5

Made in Egypt

صنع في مصر

Learning Outcomes



Listening

- Recognize specific information about Egyptian places and projects.
- Identify main ideas in short descriptions of cities.
- Differentiate between the final sounds /d/, /t/, and /ɪd/ in regular past simple verbs.



Speaking

- Talk about important places and projects in Egypt.
- Express opinions about modern cities and clean energy.
- Describe visits to museums or tourist places in Egypt.



Reading

- Recognize Egypt's modern and historical projects.
- Distinguish between facts and opinions in a factual and opinion based texts.
- Identify specific information related to a reading text.



Writing

- Use past simple in affirmative & negative forms in meaningful sentences.
- Write a paragraph to express an opinion with reasons and examples.
- Create a display board about an object in the Grand Egyptian Museum.

Lesson 1 A Trip Through Time

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

**guided tour**

جولة إرشادية

**fly**

يسافر بالطائرة - يطير

**board**

يصعد على متن الطائرة

**passport**

جواز سفر

**luggage**

أمتعة - حقائب السفر

**information desk**

مكتب معلومات

**brochure**

كتيب

**travel plan**

خطة السفر

**temples**

معابد

**Pharaohs**

الفراعنة

**Grand Egyptian Museum**

المتحف المصري الكبير

**exhibition**

معرض

Unit 5



Tutankhamun's mask

قناع توت عنخ آمون



mummies

مومياوات



Solar Boat

قارب شمسي



pack

يُحزم الأمتعة



book

يُحجز تذكرة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

almost	تقريبًا	located	يقع
amazing shows	عروض مذهلة	project	مشروع
ancient	قديم	spot	مكان - بقعة
corner	زاوية	suitcases	حقائب سفر
country	بلد	ticket	تذكرة
entrance	مدخل	tourists	سائحون
grand	كبير - عظيم	trip	رحلة قصيرة
history	تاريخ	unusual	غير عادي
hotel room	غرفة فندق	visitors	زوار

Expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

one of the oldest countries

واحدة من أقدم الدول

belong to

ينتمي لـ

amazing stories from history

قصص رائعة من التاريخ

come to

يأتي إلى

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

ancient and modern Egypt

stands near

مصر القديمة والحديثة

تقع قريبا من

not just a building

tells about

ليس مجرد مبنى

يخبر عن

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
ask	يَسْأَل	asked	asked
belong	يَنْتَمِي	belonged	belonged
board	يصعد (على متن الطائرة، إلخ)	boarded	boarded
book	يَحْجِز	booked	booked
enjoy	يَسْتَمْتِع	enjoyed	enjoyed
explore	يَسْتَكْشِف	explored	explored
finish	يُنْهِي	finished	finished
help	يُسَاعِد	helped	helped
learn	يَتَعَلَّم	learned	learned
live	يَعِيش	lived	lived
pack	يَحْزِم الأمتعة	packed	packed
use	يَسْتَخْدِم	used	used
visit	يُزُور	visited	visited

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
be	يكون	was/were	been
build	يَبْنِي	built	built

Present		Past	p.p.
come	يأتي	came	come
fly	يسافر بالطائرة / يطير	flew	flown
get	يحصل على	got	got / gotten
have	يملك / لديه	had	had
see	يرى	saw	seen
show	يُظهر	showed	shown
stand	يَقِف	stood	stood
take	يأخذ	took	taken
tell	يُخبر	told	told



Listen and read

The Grand Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري الجديد



Egypt is one of the oldest countries in the world. It has pyramids, ancient temples, strong pharaohs, and amazing stories from history. Each year, tourists from many countries come to explore the wonders of this **unusual** land. In Egypt, history lives in every corner.

مصر من أقدم دول العالم. فيها الأهرامات والمعابد القديمة والفراعنة الأقوياء، وقصص رائعة من التاريخ. يزور السياح من دول كثيرة مصر كل عام لاكتشاف عجائب هذه الأرض المميزة. في مصر، يعيش التاريخ في كل زاوية.

One of the newest and most exciting places to visit is the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM). Work on the museum took almost 20 years to finish. It stands near the Pyramids in Giza; the museum was built in this **spot** so visitors can enjoy both ancient and modern Egypt in one trip.

ومن أحدث وأروع الأماكن التي يمكن زيارتها المتحف المصري الكبير (GEM). والذي استغرق بنائه حوالي عشرين عامًا حتى اكتمل. ويقع المتحف بالقرب من الأهرامات في الجيزة، وتم اختيار هذا المكان حتى يتمكن الزوار من الاستمتاع بمصر القديمة والحديثة في زيارة واحدة.

Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real **mummies**, and even the Solar Boat that belonged to King Khufu. The objects are shown in a special way that tells the story of Egypt from the beginning to the end of the time of the pharaohs.

يمكن للزوار رؤية تماثيل ومجوهرات ذهبية وأدوات ومومياوات حقيقية، وحتى القارب الشمسي الذي كان يخص الملك خوفو. يتم عرض القطع بطريقة مميزة تروي قصة مصر من بدايتها وحتى نهاية عصر الفراعنة.

At the **entrance**, there is an information desk where visitors can ask questions or get help. The museum also uses modern technology, like smart screens and **amazing shows**, to help people learn in a fun way.

وعند المدخل، هناك مكتب معلومات يمكن للزوار من خلاله طرح الأسئلة أو طلب المساعدة. كما يستخدم المتحف التكنولوجيا الحديثة مثل الشاشات الذكية والعروض الرائعة لمساعدة الناس على التعلم بطريقة ممتعة.

The Grand Egyptian Museum is not just a building; it is a place where Egypt's story comes to life.

المتحف المصري الكبير ليس مجرد مبنى؛ بل هو مكان تنبض فيه قصة مصر بالحياة.



Language Notes:

1 trip vs. journey:

● trip:

رحلة قصيرة

▶ We went on a weekend **trip** to the mountains.

● journey:

رحلة طويلة

▶ His **journey** across the desert took five days.

2 for suggestion:

● Let's + base verb:

▶ Let's take a photo together.

للاقتراح

Let's + مصدر الفعل

3 for polite requests:

● I'd like to + base verb:

▶ I'd like to visit the pyramids.

لطلب بأدب

I'd like to + مصدر الفعل

Listen again and answer the questions:



Student's Book

1. Why do tourists visit Egypt?



2. How long did it take to finish the museum?



3. What can visitors see inside the museum?



4. Where can visitors ask for help?



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



Student's Book

1. I bought a small pyramid as a from the gift shop.

a) painting

b) color

c) souvenir

d) sport

2. We saw a mummy in the new at the museum.

a) class

b) exhibition

c) playground

d) hospital

3. Our teacher gave us a with times and places for the trip.

a) travel plan

b) test paper

c) storybook

d) math sheet

4. I went to the when I didn't know where to go.

a) toy shop

b) information desk

c) swimming pool

d) bedroom

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer:

- Before traveling, you must remember to pack your (suitcases - souvenir - brochure - exhibition) and tickets.
- At the airport, you need to collect your (mummy - luggage - solar boat - mask) from the baggage claim area.
- Visitors to Egypt often buy a (travel plan - guided tour - suitcase - souvenir) to remember their trip.
- The (information desk - swimming pool - exhibition - ticket) is where you can ask for directions in the museum.
- To enter the Grand Egyptian Museum, you need to buy a (mask - ticket - suitcase - travel) first.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

information desk - guided tour - brochure - souvenir - passport

Ahmed and his sister were excited to visit the new art museum in the city. They picked up a ① at the entrance to learn more about the exhibits. Later, they joined a ② with a guide to explore the gallery. Before leaving, they bought a ③ and asked for help at the ④ They had a wonderful day learning about art and history.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

David, a tourist from France, recently arrived in Cairo with his suitcase and luggage. He had a detailed travel plan to explore the city's wonders. His first stop was his hotel, where he found a brochure about local attractions. At the information desk, he learned more about the Grand Egyptian Museum. He bought a ticket for a guided tour to see ancient exhibits and the Solar Boat. Before heading back, he visited the gift shop to buy a unique souvenir to remember his amazing trip.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- David arrived with his suitcase and
 a) garbage b) books c) luggage d) brochure
- He had a detailed travel to explore the city's wonders.
 a) plan b) plane c) train d) bus

B Answer the following questions:

- Where did David come from?
 ▶
- Give a suitable title to the text.
 ▶
- Why did David visit the gift shop?
 ▶

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences:

- trip - the - suitcase - for - packed - his - He.
 ▶
- passport - showed - The - airport - at - her - tourist - the.
 ▶
- help - You - at - desk - can - the - find - information.
 ▶
- many - the - tour - joined - guided - visitors - How?
 ▶ ?

5 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"How I spent my last trip"

▶ **Where did you spend it?** ▶ **Who did you go with?** ▶ **When did you go?**

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 2

A Dream Comes True

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



plateau

هضبة



mountain

جبل



smart city

مدينة ذكية



cable car

التلفريك



peaceful

هادئ



water park

مدينة ألعاب مائية

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

national plan

خطة وطنية

run businesses

يدير أعمالاً

vision

رؤية (مستقبلية)

education

التعليم

hub

محور

abroad

في الخارج

crowding

الازدحام

medicine

الطب

leading

رائد - قيادي

engineering

الهندسة

government

حكومة

environment

البيئة

luxury

رفاهية - فاخرة

area

منطقة

sea views

إطلالات على البحر

sustainable

مستدام

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

leading smart cities	مدن ذكية رائدة	prove to be	يثبت أنه
center for education and science	مركز للتعليم والعلوم	offers from	عروض من
full of life	ملئية بالحياة	moving in	ينتقل إلى - يدخل
great example of	مثال رائع لـ	plan to	يخطط لـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
devise	يبتكر	devised	devised
move	ينتقل	moved	moved
plan	يخطط	planned	planned
reduce	يقلل	reduced	reduced
welcome	يرحب	welcomed	welcomed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
run	يدور - يُشغل	ran	run
teach	يُعلم	taught	taught

Read and learn

Al Galala: Egypt's City Above The Clouds

الجلالة: مدينة مصر فوق السحاب

Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt, built on the Al Galala **Plateau** near Ain Sokhna. It was part of a national plan devised in 2015 to reduce crowding in older cities. Today, it is one of Egypt's leading **smart cities** with clean air and sea views.



مدينة الجلالة هي مدينة حديثة في مصر، بُنيت على هضبة الجلالة بالقرب من العين السخنة. كانت جزءًا من خطة وطنية وُضعت في عام 2015 لتقليل الازدحام في المدن القديمة. اليوم، تُعد من أبرز المدن الذكية في مصر، وتتميز بهواء نقي ومناظر تطل على البحر.

The city has **luxury** hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car that offers great views from the mountain to the sea. Al Galala is also a center for education and science. Galala University welcomes students from Egypt and abroad to study medicine, engineering, and more.

تضم المدينة فنادق فاخرة، وشواطئ، وحديقة مائية، وتلفريك شهير يوفر مناظر رائعة من الجبل إلى البحر. كما أن الجلالة مركز للتعليم والعلوم. ترحب جامعة الجلالة بالطلاب من مصر ومن الخارج لدراسة الطب، والهندسة، وغيرهما.

In the past, the area was empty, but now it is full of life. People work in hotels, teach, or run businesses. More families are moving in to enjoy its peaceful environment.

في الماضي، كانت المنطقة خالية، لكنها الآن مليئة بالحياة. يعمل الناس في الفنادق، أو يُدرّسون، أو يديرون أعمالاً تجارية. تنتقل المزيد من العائلات للعيش هناك للاستمتاع بالبيئة الهادئة.

The government plans to build more homes, parks, and transportation links. Al Galala is a great example of Egypt's **vision** for smart, **sustainable** cities.

تخطط الحكومة لبناء المزيد من المنازل، والحدائق، ووسائل النقل. وتُعد الجلالة مثالاً رائعاً لرؤية مصر لبناء مدن ذكية ومستدامة.



Language Notes:

1 abroad vs. aboard:

● **abroad:**

في الخارج

▶ She studied **abroad** in the UK.

● **aboard:**

على متن - داخل (وسيلة نقل)

▶ Welcome **aboard** the plane.

2 plateau vs. mountain:

● **plateau:**

هضبة

● **mountain:**

جبل

▶ Al Galala is on a **plateau**.

▶ We climbed a high **mountain** during our trip.

Unit 5

3 vision vs. dream:

● **vision:** رؤية (مستقبلية)

● **dream:** حلم شخصي

▶ Egypt has a **vision** for the future.

▶ My **dream** is to travel around the world.

● **medicine:**

الطب - دواء

▶ She wants to study **medicine** and become a doctor.

▶ This **medicine** should be taken after meals.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



sustainable - moving - overcrowded - center

Al Galala is a new city near the Red Sea. It helps people move away from big and ① cities. There are comfortable hotels and clean beaches for visitors. From the ②, people can see a great view of the sea and mountains. The city is also a center for education and learning. Many families are ③ to Al Galala to enjoy a better life. It is part of Egypt's plan to build ④ cities for the future.

Read the text again. In which paragraph can you find this information?



- | | |
|---|-----|
| 1. What students study at Galala University | () |
| 2. When the city was built | () |
| 3. How the place looked in the past | () |
| 4. Government's plan | () |

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



- | | |
|--|-----|
| 1. Al Galala City is located on the Mediterranean Sea. | () |
| 2. The cable car is one of the main attractions in Al Galala City. | () |
| 3. Al Galala Plateau was an empty place in the past. | () |
| 4. Only Egyptians are allowed to study at Galala University. | () |



Language in Use:



The Past Simple Tense:

زمن الماضي البسيط

● We use the past simple to describe: نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط لوصف:

① Completed actions in the past: أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي

Example:

▶ She **visited** Egypt last year.

② Actions that happened one after another in the past:

أحداث حدثت بالتسلسل في الماضي

Example:

▶ We **entered** the museum, **took** photos, and **bought** souvenirs.

③ Habits in the past:

عادات كانت تحدث بانتظام في الماضي

Example:

▶ He **played** outside after school every day.

Affirmative Form:

Structure: Subject + Past Verb
فاعل الفعل في الماضي

A) Regular Verbs:

الأفعال المنتظمة

◆ Add **-ed**, **-d**, or **-ied** to the base form:

Examples:

▶ He **visited** his uncle last Friday.

▶ She **studied** hard for the test.

● Spelling Rules:

- ◆ Add (d) if the verb ends in -e like → liked.
- ◆ Double the final consonant if the verb is short and ends with a vowel + consonant. stop → stopped.
- ◆ Add (-ied) when the verb ends with (y) preceded by a consonant letter. study → studied

B) Irregular Verbs :

- ◆ These have special past forms (no rule-memorize them):

Examples:

- ▶ We **got** a new computer a week ago.
- ▶ They **went** to Luxor last winter.

Negative Form:

Subject + did not (didn't) + base verb
فاعل الفعل الأساسي

Examples:

- ▶ He **didn't travel** to Cairo.
- ▶ They **didn't eat** breakfast.

Question Form:

● Yes/No Questions:

Did + Subject + base verb +?
فاعل الفعل الأساسي

Example:

- ▶ Did you visit the museum?

⇒ Yes, I did.

⇒ No, I didn't.

● Wh- Questions:

Wh-word + did + Subject + base verb +?
أداة السؤال فاعل الفعل الأساسي

Example:

► Where did he go yesterday?

⇒ He went to the club.

Common Time Expressions:

تعبيرات زمنية شائعة

• yesterday	أمس	• in 2010	في عام 2010
• last week / month / year	الأسبوع / الشهر / السنة الماضية أمس	• when I was a child	عندما كنت طفلاً

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The takes tourists up the mountain.
a) center b) engineering c) cable car d) sustainable
- hotels have golden elevators.
a) Luxury b) Engineering c) Smart city d) Overcrowded
- The team designed new bridges.
a) hub b) beach c) plateau d) engineering
- Grandma us a delicious cake yesterday.
a) makes b) make c) made d) making
- They their new game two hours ago.
a) starts b) started c) starting d) start
- I a new mobile last month.
a) bought b) buying c) buys d) buy
- Did he his room in the morning?
a) cleaned b) cleans c) cleaning d) clean
- The fisherman a big fish yesterday.
a) catch b) catches c) catching d) caught
- the beach last summer?
a) Did you visited b) Did you visit c) Do you visit d) Have you visited
- They the cable car tickets.
a) didn't booked b) isn't book c) not book d) didn't book

11. She engineering in 2020.
a) study b) studied c) studying d) studies
12. Why ?
a) didn't they come b) they didn't come
c) did they not came d) doesn't they come
13. We the cable car to the mountain yesterday.
a) ride b) rode c) riding d) rides
14. Al Galala is built on a, which is a flat, high area of land.
a) mountain b) plateau c) cable car d) water park
15. A/An is a city that uses technology to make life better for its people.
a) area b) hub c) smart city d) plateau
16. A/An is a fun place with pools and slides for water games.
a) cable car b) water park c) plateau d) environment
17. The government has a for building smart, sustainable cities.
a) vision b) mountain c) cable car d) plateau

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

smart city - mountain - peaceful - beauty - views

Al Galala is a new city in Egypt built on a high plateau. It is close to the Red Sea and offers beautiful ① and fresh air. The government wants it to be a ② with modern services and clean energy. Tourists can stay in hotels with all the services they want and enjoy a ③ and calm place to relax, learn, and explore Egypt's

④

3

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. He (clean) his new shoes last morning. SB
2. The teacher (not be) at the library yesterday. SB
3. They (have) dinner an hour ago. SB
4. (Do) you enjoy the trip last week? SB
5. Did you (finished) the report yesterday? SB
6. Yesterday, Sarah (visit) the Grand Egyptian Museum.

7. The engineers (build) a smart city on the plateau last year.
8. We (not/take) the cable car because it was too expensive.
9. (you/see) the fisherman by the beach yesterday?
10. He (not/study) medicine; he chose engineering instead.
11. The tourists (be) excited to ride the luxury cruise.
12. (she/pack) her luggage carefully for the trip?
13. I (not/like) the overcrowded market, so I left quickly.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. yesterday - beach - to - went - the - **She**.
2. built - **They** - city - sustainable - a - last year.
3. cable car - mountain - rode - the - **We** - to - the.
4. didn't - medicine - **He** - study - university - at.
5. visit - **Did** - Grand - Egyptian Museum - you - the?

5 Punctuate the following:

1. the fisherman caught a big fish yesterday
2. how does Al Galala City prove to be a wonder

6 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Haitham:

Tell him what you and your family did last week. Your email address is ali33@gmail.com, and your friend's email address is haitham@gmail.com.

From	:	
To	:	
Subject	:	
.....		
.....		
.....		



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

**unity**

الوحدة - الاتحاد

**strength**

قوة

**water (v.)**

يروي - يسقي

**crops**

محاصيل

**bundle of sticks**

حزمة من العصي

**wisdom**

حكمة

**fighting**

شجار - قتال

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

village	قرية	worried	قلق
sons	أبناء	single	مفرد / واحد
farmer	فلاح	easily	بسهولة
land	أرض		

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

work together	يعملون معًا	along the Nile River	على ضفاف النيل
grow weaker	يضعف تدريجيًا	plenty of	الكثير من
worried about	يقلق بشأن	argue about	يتجادل بشأن
a long time ago	منذ زمن بعيد	listen to	يستمع إلى

Definitions تعريفات

setting	the place and time of a story
middle	this is where the problem or main event happens
beginning	this is where a story starts
characters	the people or animals in a story
end	this is where a story ends
moral	the lesson we learn from a story

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p
argue	يجادل	argued	argued
fail	يفشل	failed	failed
stop	يتوقف	stopped	stopped
try	يحاول	tried	tried
unite	يتحد - يوحد	united	united
water	يروي (النباتات)	watered	watered
work	يعمل	worked	worked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p
break	يكسر	broke	broken
feed	يطعم	fed	fed
give	يعطي	gave	given
grow	ينمو - يصبح	grew	grown
say	يقول	said	said
show	يُظهر	showed	shown
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
fight	يتشاجر	fought	fought

Story Elements:

1 Beginning: This is where your trip starts! It tells you:

البداية (الافتتاحية) حيث تبدأ رحلتك! و البداية تخبرك:

- Who is in the story (the people or animals)?
• من بالقصة من شخصيات (بشر أو حيوانات)?
- Where the story happens.
• مكان حدوث القصة.
- What the main character wants.
• ماذا تريد الشخصية الرئيسية.

2 Middle: This is the longest part of your trip, where all the adventures happen!

الوسط: هذا هو الجزء الأطول في رحلتك، حيث تبدأ كل المغامرات!

- The characters face problems or challenges.
• الشخصيات تواجه مشاكل أو تحديات.
- They try to solve the problems, and things might get more exciting.
• يحاولون حل المشاكل و ربما تصبح الأمور أكثر إثارة.

3 End: This is when your trip is over, and you arrive at your destination! **النهاية:** هنا حيث تنتهي رحلتك و تصل إلى وجهتك!

- The problem in the story gets solved.
• يتم حل المشكلة التي في القصة.
- You find out what happens to the characters.
• تكتشف ما يحدث للشخصيات.
- The story feels finished.
• تشعر و كأن القصة تنتهي.

4 Setting: This tells you when and where the story takes place.
• يخبرك متى و أين تحدث القصة.

Listen and learn



The Bundle of Sticks حزمة العصي

A long time ago, in a small village along the Nile River, there lived an old man with his three sons. The old man was a farmer who worked hard growing crops on his land. The farm was big and gave them plenty of food, but the three sons were always fighting. They argued about who would water the crops, feed the animals, and who worked the hardest.



منذ زمن بعيد، في قرية صغيرة على ضفاف نهر النيل، كان هناك رجل مسن يعيش مع أبنائه الثلاثة. كان الرجل فلاحًا يعمل بجد في زراعة المحاصيل على أرضه. كانت المزرعة كبيرة وتوفر لهم الكثير من الطعام، لكن الأبناء الثلاثة كانوا دائمًا يتشاجرون. كانوا يختلفون على من سيسقي المحاصيل، ومن يطعم الحيوانات، ومن يعمل أكثر من الآخر.

This made their father very worried.

هذا الأمر جعل والدهم يشعر بقلق شديد.

As the old man grew weaker, he became more worried about his sons. "My sons," he said, "you should stop fighting and work together. If you all unite, you will be strong". The three sons did not listen to their father.

ومع تقدم الرجل في السن وضعف جسده، ازداد قلقه على أبنائه. فقال لهم: "يا أبنائي، يجب أن تتوقفوا عن الشجار وتعملوا معًا. إذا اتحدتم، ستكونون أقوىاء". لكن الأبناء الثلاثة لم يستمعوا إلى والدهم.

One day, the father called his sons and showed them a bundle of sticks tied together. He asked each son to break the bundle. Each one tried hard, but they failed.

في أحد الأيام، دعا الأب أبنائه وأراهم حزمة من العصي المربوطة معًا. وطلب من كل واحد منهم أن يحاول كسر الحزمة. حاول كل واحد منهم جاهدًا، لكنهم فشلوا.

Then, the father untied the bundle and gave them single sticks. The sons broke them easily.

ثم فك الأب الحزمة وأعطى كل واحد منهم عصًا واحدة. فكسرها الأبناء بسهولة.

You see," said the father, "these sticks are just like you. Together, you are strong. But alone, you can be broken easily." The father went on saying, "Unity gives strength." From that day on, the sons understood their father's wisdom. They stopped fighting and worked together.

فقال الأب: "أرأيتم؟ هذه العصي مثلكم تمامًا. عندما تكونون معًا، تكونون أقوىاء. لكن عندما يكون كل واحد منكم وحده، يمكن كسره بسهولة." ثم أضاف قائلاً: "الاتحاد قوة." ومنذ ذلك اليوم، فهم الأبناء حكمة والدهم. وتوقفوا عن الشجار، وبدؤوا يعملون معًا.



Tip!

- When you read a story, try to feel what the character feels.
- Think: Do I feel the same in this part?

Listen and answer the following question:



Student's Book

- Why does the old man use the bundle?



Circle the correct word:



Student's Book

- The father was a (farmer - fisherman - fighter).
- The old man was very (happy - worried - excited) about his sons.
- The bundle of sticks was (easy - hard - soft) to break.
- The moral of the story is to (work together - fight - work alone).

Put the story events in the correct order.



Student's Book

Write numbers (1-5):

- The sons could not break the bundle of sticks. (.....)
- The old man showed his sons a bundle of sticks. (.....)
- The father gave them single sticks, and they broke them easily. (.....)
- The sons understood the lesson and started working together. (.....)
- The father asked his sons to stop fighting and work together. (.....)

Pronunciation



- When we add **-ed** to regular verbs in the past tense, the pronunciation can change.

عندما نضيف **-ed** للأفعال المنتظمة في الماضي، يتغير نطقها.

- There are three different sounds for **-ed**:

يوجد ثلاثة طرق مختلفة لنطق **-ed**:

1 ed = /t/

- ed** is pronounced **/t/** sound when the verb ends in a voiceless sound like (p, k, f, s, sh, ch).

تنطق الـ **ed** مثل صوت الـ **/t/** إذا أتت بعد صوت غير مجهور (همسي) مثل: (p, k, f, s, sh, ch).

Examples:

like → liked

watch → watched

kiss → kissed

finish → finished

2 ed = /d/

- ed** is pronounced **/d/** sound when the verb ends in a voiced sound like (b, g, v, l, m, n, r, z) or a vowel.

تنطق الـ **ed** مثل صوت الـ **/d/** إذا أتت بعد صوت جهري مثل (b, g, v, l, m, n, r, z) أو حرف متحرك.

Examples:

play → played

call → called

clean → cleaned

3 ed = /ɪd/

- ed** is pronounced **/ɪd/** sound when the verb ends in **t** or **d**.

تنطق الـ **ed** مثل صوت الـ **/ɪd/** إذا أتت بعد **t** أو **d**.

Examples:

want → wanted

need → needed

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The family showed great when they worked together.
a) unity b) bundle c) strength d) wisdom
- He found a long in the park.
a) characters b) stick c) middle d) end
- She was very to go on vacation.
a) fighter b) fisherman c) hard d) excited
- A stick is easy to break, but many together are strong.
a) heavy b) long c) single d) strong
- The of sticks couldn't be broken.
a) beach b) hub c) bundle d) moral

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

unity - bundle - strength - wisdom - stick

A group of characters were feeling worried because they faced a hard challenge. They had only one stick, but it was too soft to help. Then, a wise fighter full of ① showed them a ② of sticks. "See," he said, "one stick is weak, but together they have great ③ You must work together." They learned that ④ makes even the most difficult problems easy to solve.

3 Read these definitions. Then, choose and write the correct story element:



Student's Book

beginning - middle - end - moral - characters - setting

- The place and time of a story. (.....)
- This is where the problem or main event happens. (.....)
- The people or animals in a story. (.....)

4. This is where a story ends. (.....)
5. The lesson we learn from a story. (.....)
6. This is where a story starts. (.....)

4 Write the following words in the correct column:

ended - asked - played - opened - visited - cleaned -
watched - walked - wanted

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
.....		
.....		
.....		

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

A wise teacher once divided his class into two groups for a challenge. The first group argued loudly, each wanting to lead. The second group listened to each other and shared ideas.

For the task, they had to move heavy rocks across a field. The arguing group struggled, their rocks barely moving. The helpful group lined up and passed the rocks hand-to-hand. They finished first, proving that teamwork makes hard work easier. From that day on, the students understood the power of working together.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The gave his students a challenge.
a) teacher b) doctor c) engineer d) farmer
2. The successful group to each other.
a) argued b) listened c) slept fighting d) fought

B Answer the following questions:

3. How did they move the rocks?



4. What did the arguing group do wrong?



5. How did teamwork help the second group?



6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. couldn't - break - **The** - bundle - the - sons.



2. farm - on - **They** - work - the - together.



7 Punctuate the following:

1. the sons tried to break the bundle but they failed



2. did the father smiled at his children



8 Write a short story of (50) words using the following guiding elements:



▶ **beginning - middle - end - A situation that once happened to you**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 4-5

Egypt Goes Green
Think and Create



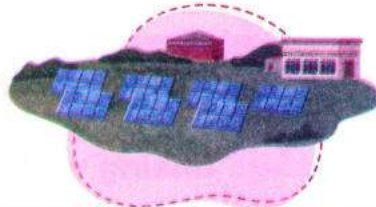
Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



solar stations

محطات شمسية



Benban Solar Park

مجمع بنبان للطاقة الشمسية



modern technology

تكنولوجيا حديثة



solar energy

طاقة شمسية



eco news

أخبار بيئية

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

training

تدريب

sustainable

مستدام

skills

مهارات

fuel

وقود

a sunny country

بلد مشمس

better future

مستقبل أفضل

provide electricity

يوفر الكهرباء

developments

تطورات

reduce pollution

يقلل التلوث

community

مجتمع

Unit 5

Adjectives

صفات

ideal	مثالي	local	محلي
sustainable	دائم	proud	فخور
safe	آمن	nearby	قريب
expensive	الثلث	valuable	ذو قيمة

Others phrases related to writing

عبارات أخرى متعلقة بالكتابة

strong adjectives	الصفات القوية	linking words	كلمات الربط
supporting reasons	الأسباب الداعمة	opinion starter	بداية الرأي
sequence words	كلمات الترتيب	use of examples	استخدام الأمثلة

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

ideal for	مثالي لـ	valuable for	قيّم لـ
instead of	بدلاً من	work with	يعمل مع
keep safe	يحافظ علي السلامة	proud of	فخور بـ
step toward	خطوة نحو	made of	مصنوع من
in conclusion	في الختام	a proud step toward a better future	خطوة مشرفة نحو مستقبل افضل
look like	يشبه	provides electricity to	يوفر الكهرباء لـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	p.p.
create	created	created
يَشْغَل - يَخْلُق		

Present		Past	PP
display	يَعْرَض	displayed	displayed
improve	يُطَوِّر	improved	improved
protect	يَحْمِي	protected	protected
provide	يُمد - يُزَوِّد	provided	provided
reduce	يُقلِّل	reduced	reduced
support	يُدْعِم	supported	supported
benefit	يَنْفَع	benefited	benefited

Read and learn

Why I Think Benban Is Important

لماذا أعتقد أن بنبان مهمة



Egypt is a sunny country, making it **ideal** for solar energy. One **important** project is Benban Solar Park near Aswan, one of the world's largest solar stations. Built between 2018 and 2019, it has over 6 million panels and provides electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories.

مصر بلد مشمس، مما يجعلها مكانًا مثاليًا للطاقة الشمسية. أحد المشاريع الرئيسية في هذا المجال هو مجمع بنبان للطاقة الشمسية بالقرب من أسوان، وهو أحد أكبر المحطات الشمسية في العالم. تم بناؤه بين عامي 2018 و2019، ويضم أكثر من 6 ملايين لوح شمسي، ويوفر الكهرباء للمنازل والمدارس والمستشفيات والمصانع.

Benban uses clean, sustainable energy, reducing pollution and keeping the air safe. It also creates thousands of jobs for engineers, builders, and locals from nearby villages, helping them support their families.

يستخدم بنبان طاقة نظيفة ومستدامة، مما يقلل التلوث ويحافظ على نقاء الهواء. كما أنه يوفر آلاف الوظائف للمهندسين والعمال وأهالي القرى المجاورة، مما يساعدهم على إعالة أسرهم.

The project is important because it saves money by using sunlight instead of expensive fuel, protects the environment, and brings jobs to Upper Egypt. Although some workers need training, it helps them learn new skills and improves local communities.

هذا المشروع مهم لأنه يوفر المال باستخدام ضوء الشمس بدلاً من الوقود الباهظ الثمن، ويحمي البيئة، ويجلب فرص عمل لصعيد مصر. ورغم أن بعض العمال يحتاجون إلى تدريب، إلا أن المشروع يساعدهم على تعلم مهارات جديدة ويحسن من أحوال المجتمعات المحلية.

Benban Solar Park is a smart and valuable project for Egypt. It benefits people, protects nature, and supports development. It's a proud step toward a cleaner, better future.

يعد مجمع بنبان للطاقة الشمسية مشروعًا ذكيًا وقيماً لمصر. فهو يفيد الناس، ويحمي الطبيعة، ويدعم التنمية. إنها خطوة عظيمة (تدعو للفخر) نحو مستقبل أنظف وأفضل.

Read and circle the correct answer between brackets:



Student's
Book

1. Solar energy comes from the (wind - water - sun).
2. Benban Solar Park is located near (Aswan - Luxor - Cairo).
3. The park has over (3 - 6 - 9) million solar panels.
4. The project created thousands of (machines - robots - jobs).
5. The writer feels (bored - proud - tired) of the project.



Project

A Display Board about an Object in the Grand Egyptian Museum

Lotus Chalice — كأس اللوتس

This chalice is made of alabaster. It looks like a white lotus flower with two handles. It was found in King Tutankhamun's tomb. Now, it is in the Grand Egyptian Museum. It was used in special ceremonies like funeral rituals. It is a symbol of eternal life and beauty. People believed it helped the king live forever in the afterlife.



هذا الكأس مصنوع من المرمر. يبدو وكأنه زهرة لوتس بيضاء ذات مقبضين. عُثر عليه في مقبرة الملك توت عنخ آمون. وهو الآن موجود في المتحف المصري الكبير. وقد استُخدم في احتفالات خاصة مثل الطقوس الجنائزية. إنه رمز للحياة الأبدية والجمال. اعتقد الناس أنه ساعد الملك على العيش للأبد في الحياة الآخرة.



Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The word "solar" means
 a) from the sun. b) using wind. c) using water. d) from fire.
2. The word "ideal" means
 a) the worst. b) very bad. c) perfect. d) very windy .
3. The word "provides" means
 a) to take away. b) to give or supply.
 c) to sell. d) to fix.
4. What is another word for "sustainable"?
 a) short-term b) running out
 c) polluting the air d) long-lasting and clean
5. The word "improves" means to make things
 a) worse b) more expensive.
 c) better. d) smaller.
6. The word "support" in the phrase "support their families" means
 a) to stand up. b) to get. c) to play. d) to help.
7. The opposite of "expensive" is
 a) hard. b) cheap. c) sunny. d) big.
8. The word "reduces" in the phrase "reducing pollution" means
 a) to make more b) to get rid of. c) to make less. d) to make colorful

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. should - They - make - a - decision - very - soon.
?
2. the - a movie - We - watched - in - middle - the - of - day.
?
3. the - all - the - bundles - Did - tie - together - farmer?
?

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

solar - pollution - water - electricity - saves

The Benban Solar Park is an important project in Egypt. It uses
 ① energy from the sun. This clean energy helps in reducing
 ② and keeps the air clean. By using sunlight, the park
 ③ money instead of using expensive fuel. It also provides
 ④ to homes and schools, creates thousands of jobs for people,
 and protects the environment.

4 Punctuate the following:

1. egypt is a sunny country and ideal for solar energy

▶

2. was the lotus chalice used in ceremonies

▶

5 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Ramy:

Tell him about your visit to Benban Solar Park and how amazing it is using solar energy. Your email address is khaled@gmail.com, and your friend's email address is ramy@gmail.com.

...

📍

☆

📎

🔍

🗑️

⌵

From

:

.....

To

:

.....

Subject

:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 5

Main Vocabulary

brochure	كتيب	temples	معابد
luggage	أمتعة - حقائب	travel plan	خطة السفر
information desk	مكتب معلومات	Tutankhamun's mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون
Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير	sustainable	دائم
mummies	مومياوات	smart city	مدينة ذكية
exhibition	معرض	water park	مدينة ألعاب مائية
fighting	شجار - قتال	wisdom	حكمة
pharaohs	الفراعنة	plateau	هضبة
Solar Boat	قارب شمسي	cable car	التفريك
pack	يحزم الأمتعة	peaceful	هادئ
mummies	مومياوات	Benban Solar Park	مجمع بنبان للطاقة الشمسية
book	يحجز تذكرة	unity	الوحدة/الاتحاد
Pharaohs	الفراعنة	strength	قوة
board	يصعد على متن الطائرة	water park	مدينة ألعاب مائية
guided tour	جولة إرشادية	bundle of sticks	حزمة من العصي
Solar Boat	قارب شمسي	wisdom	حكمة
solar energy	طاقة شمسية	modern technology	تكنولوجيا حديثة
solar stations	محطات شمسية	Passport	جواز سفر
community	مجتمع	eco news	أخبار بيئية
valuable	ذو قيمة	argue	يجادل

Language In Use



The Past Simple Tense:

زمن الماضي البسيط

● We use the past simple to describe:

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط لوصف:

① Completed actions in the past:

أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي

▶ She **visited** Egypt last year.

2 Actions that happened one after another in the past:

أحداث حدثت بالتسلسل في الماضي

▶ We **entered** the museum, **took** photos, and **bought** souvenirs.

3 Habits in the past:

عادات كانت تحدث بانتظام في الماضي

▶ He **played** outside after school every day.



Dictation:

almost	قرية
amazing shows	الكثير من
located	مفرد / واحد
entrance	قَلْب
project	بسهولة
suitcases	مزارع
unusual	أرض
national plan	تدريب
medicine	وقود
area	مجتمع
sustainable	مستقبل أفضل
bundle of sticks	تطورات
fighting	يقلل التلوث
sea views	يوفر الكهرباء
run business	طاقة شمسية
luxury	ذو قيمة
ideal	فخور بـ
safe	الآمن
local	في الختام
nearby	بدلاً من

Writing Skills

How I spent my last trip

Last summer, I went to the beach with my family. We stayed in a small hotel near the sea. Every day, I swam in the water and built sandcastles. We also ate delicious food and watched the beautiful sunset. I had so much fun playing with my brother and collecting seashells. It was a happy and exciting trip that I will never forget.



Search

From : ali33@gmail.com
To : haitham@gmail.com
Subject : My Week with Family.

Last week, my family and I visited the Smart City. We spent the whole day exploring different places there. We saw beautiful buildings, walked in the parks, and took lots of pictures. We also tried some delicious food from a small café. It was a fun and exciting day, and I really enjoyed spending time with my family.

How was your week?

your friend,

Ali

A Situation that once happened to me

One day at school, I lost my backpack. I felt very worried because my homework was inside. I looked everywhere in the classroom and asked my friends for help. Finally, my teacher found it under a desk. I was so happy and relax. This situation taught me to be more careful with my things.



Search

From : khaled@gmail.com
To : ramy@gmail.com
Subject : My Visit to Benban Solar Park

Last weekend, I visited Benban Solar Park. It was amazing to see thousands of solar panels working together to create clean energy from sunlight. I learned how solar energy helps reduce pollution and protect the environment. The park is very big and beautiful. I really enjoyed the visit and hope you can see it too one day!

your friend,

Khaled



Search

From : ali@gmail.com
To : jack@gmail.com
Subject : Monuments and Treasures in My Country

Hi Jack,

I want to tell you about the amazing monuments and treasures in my country. We have the Great Pyramids and the Sphinx, which are very old and famous. Many treasures are kept in museums like the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. These places show our rich history and culture. I hope you can visit one day to see them yourself!

your friend,

Ali

The Importance of Unity

Unity is very important because it brings people together. When we cooperate and help each other, we become stronger. Working as a team makes hard tasks easier and better. Unity helps us solve problems and achieve our goals. Together, we can do great things. That is why cooperation and strength come from being united.



Practice 9 on Unit 5

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Total

60

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

passport - luggage - souvenir - brochure - ticket

Omar : Don't forget your ① before we leave for the airport!

Lina : I won't! I've already packed my ②

Omar : At the museum, let's get a ③ to learn more about the exhibits.

Lina : Good idea! I also want to buy a nice ④ before we go back.

Omar : And don't lose your ⑤ for the flight!

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. sunny - country - rainy - windy

2. electricity - pollution - apple - energy

3. engineers - workers - transportation - technicians

4. papyrus - modern - rituals - ceremonies

5. modern - future - past - technology

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. You need a (passport - souvenir - cable car - brochure) to travel to another country.

2. A (passport - mountain - souvenir - board) is something you buy to remember a trip.

3. We joined a (book - guided tour - cable car - middle) to learn more about the ancient city.

4. A (board - luggage - cable car - travel plan) takes people up steep mountains by cable.

5. The president spoke about (unity - brochure - passport - mountain) and working together as one country.

6. She (goes - went - go - going) to the museum last weekend.

7. They (**buy** - **bought** - **buys** - **buying**) a new car two days ago.
8. My father didn't (**leave** - **left** - **leaves** - **leaving**) early this morning.
9. I (**see** - **saw** - **sees** - **seeing**) a movie with my friends last night.
10. He (**didn't** - **didn't do** - **don't do** - **do**) his homework before dinner.

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last month, our class visited the amazing Benban Solar Park. We learned how Egypt uses sunshine to create clean electricity. The guide showed us millions of shiny solar panels that provided power to nearby schools. Some students helped workers clean the panels carefully. Our teacher took photos of the special ceremony near the main station. The trip taught us how solar energy reduces pollution. We wrote reports about the experience when we returned to school. Everyone agreed it was the most educational trip this year!

A Answer the following questions:

1. When did the class visit Benban Solar Park?

▶

2. What did the students help workers do?

▶

3. Why was the trip important for the students?

▶

B Choose the correct answer:

4. The solar panels (**provided** - **reduced** - **agreed** - **needed**) electricity to schools.
5. Students (**cleaned** - **broke** - **forgot** - **helped**) the panels with workers.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. each - other - **They** - will - never - argue - with.

▶

2. to - games - **We** - love - together - always - play.

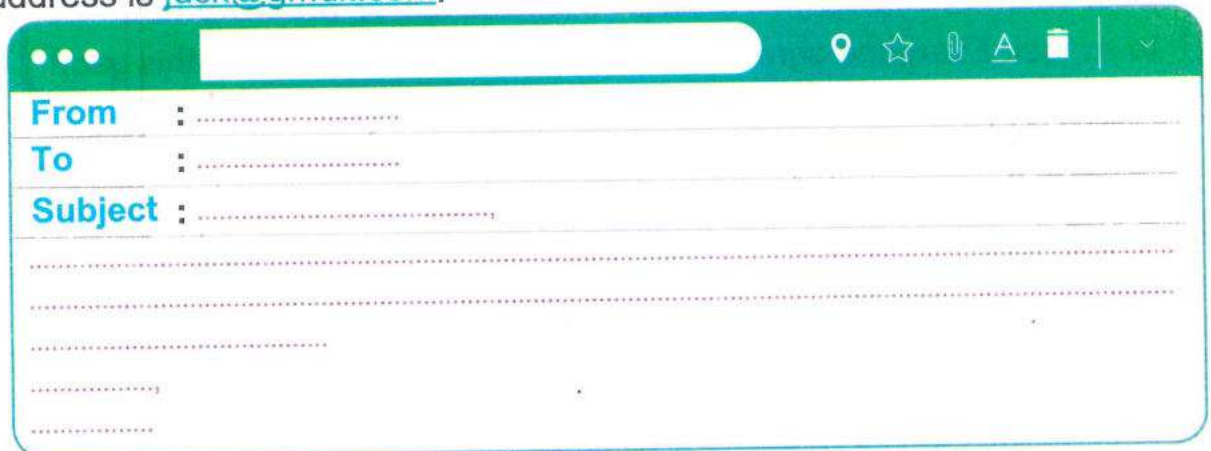
3. workers - do - the - help - **How** - engineers - the - with - project?

4. Museum - displays - the - chalice - lotus - Grand - **The** - Egyptian

5. clean - **Why** - important - is - energy - people - to?

6 Write an email of five sentences to your English friend Jack:

Tell him about the monuments and treasures of your country and where they put them. Your email address is ali@gmail.com, and your friend's email address is jack@gmail.com.



The image shows a stylized email composition window. At the top is a green header bar with three white dots on the left and icons for location, star, paperclip, text color, and background color on the right. Below the header is a white area with labels 'From', 'To', and 'Subject' in blue, each followed by a colon and a dotted line for text entry. Below these labels are several horizontal dotted lines for writing the body of the email.

Practice 10 on Unit 5

1

Listen and circle the correct answer:



1. Modern technology, like solar stations, helps (**reduce** - increase - ignore - borrow) pollution.
2. The Benban Solar Park provides electricity to nearby (**tombs** - villages - rituals - pools).
3. Ancient Egyptians believed the Lotus Chalice meant (**eternal life** - daily meals - modern tools - mobile phones).
4. Solar energy is (**destroyed** - disagreed - wrapped - ideal) for Egypt's sunny climate.

2

Choose the correct answer:

1. The museum gave us a (**travel plan** - brochure - plateau - strength) with information about the exhibits.
2. Using renewable energy helps to (**destroy** - provide - reduce - disagree) electricity.
2. People use (**cable cars** - buses - bicycles - boats) to travel up and down mountains.

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

passport - board - pack - book - fly

Traveling abroad requires careful preparation. You must have a valid ① before you travel abroad. It's important to ② your flight early to avoid any problems. The night before your trip, make sure to ③ your suitcase carefully. At the airport, travelers wait at the gate to ④ the plane.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

In a small village lived many people. They often worked alone. One day, a wise man saw them struggling. He took a bundle of sticks and said, "Look, one stick is weak, but if you tie them together, they have great strength!" He taught them that when they work together, they find unity. This made all their problems easy to solve, and the village became happy. From that day on, everyone helped one another. They lived peacefully and grew stronger as a community.

A

Choose the correct answer:

1. The villagers often (**used** - ate - lived - worked) alone.
2. The wise man saw them (**fighting** - talking - struggling - playing).

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What happened when the wise man tied the sticks together?
▶
4. What did the wise man teach the villagers about working together?
▶
5. How did the wise man's lesson help the villagers later?
▶

5

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. modern - uses - technology - Benban - Solar Park.
▶
2. workers - with - engineers - local - work - The.
▶

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Everyone at the school became a Water Saver. ()
2. Teachers ignored the posters and the friends' message. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did Noor, Ahmed, and Farida receive?

▶

4. What fun activity did some classes start?

▶

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Did he (cleaned) his room in the morning?
2. He (isn't) paint new pictures last night.

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"The importance of unity"

► cooperation - strength

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 2 | On Units 4-5

Practice 7 based on units 4 - 5

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

scroll - ancient - stone - linen - gold

Nour : Hey Omar! Are you working on the history project?

Omar : Yes! I'm reading about materials the ① Egyptians used. It's so cool. They used ②, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and even gold!

Nour : That's amazing! I saw a picture of a papyrus ③ in a museum. It's unbelievable how long that material could survive.

Omar : I know! They also used ④ for clothing.

Nour : And ⑤ was used for making jewelry and decorations.

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. smart-city - mountain - laptop - plateau

2. oil - gas - gold - chicken

3. metal - mineral - plastic - rock

4. jewelry - building - necklace - bracelet

5. plant - stone tree - flower -

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Ancient Egyptians used (linen - papyrus - stone - clay) for writing.

2. Gases from cars and buses can (pollute - protect - charge - clean) the air.

3. I'd like to (fly - pack - book - board) a hotel room, please.

4. They saw a mummy in the new (hospital - playground - exhibition -

school) at the museum.

5. We use (greenhouses - wind turbines - fridges - solar panels) to get energy from the sun.
6. To be healthy, you (mustn't - must - don't have to - shouldn't) eat fruits and vegetables.
7. Maher (did - be - were did - was) at home yesterday.
8. Students (mustn't - can - should - must) use their phones in class.
9. They (going - gone - goes - went) to the club yesterday.
10. Noha (didn't cleaned - didn't clean - didn't cleaning - didn't cleans) the house last night.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

Al Galala is a new city near the Red Sea that helps people move away from big and crowded cities. It has comfortable hotels and clean beaches for visitors to enjoy. From the cable car, people can see a great view of the sea and mountains. The city is also a center for education and learning. Many families are moving to Al Galala to enjoy a better life. It is part of Egypt's plan to build smart cities for the future.

A Answer the following questions:

1. Why do many families choose to move to Al Galala?
▶
2. How does the cable car enhance the experience of visiting Al Galala?
▶
3. What makes Al Galala an important part of Egypt's future plans?
▶

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Al Galala is a new city near the (Nile River - Red Sea - Mediterranean Sea - Sahara Desert).
5. The city is known for its comfortable hotels and (mountains - beaches - forests - deserts).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. help - the - **How** - people - does - High Dam?



2. find - we - oil - **Where** - in Egypt - do?



3. the - trip - last week - you - **Did** - enjoy?



4. year - **They** - travel - Aswan - to - will - next.



5. comes - energy - **Solar** - from - the - sun.



6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Helping My Community"



1. What exhibits can you see at the museum?

2. How do you get to the museum?

3. What are the museum's opening hours?

4. Are there guided tours available?

5. What special activities does the museum offer?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice 7 based on units 4 - 5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. The old man was a (teacher - farmer - doctor - engineer) .
2. The farm was (small - empty - large - dirty) and gave them plenty of food.
3. The three sons were always (happy - studying - working - fighting) .
4. They argued about who would (water - eat - sell - buy) the crops.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A (mountain - plateau - valley - river) is a flat, high area of land.
2. (Granite - Linen - Wood - Clay) is a type of fabric made from the flax plant.
3. Egypt's (gifts - resources - temples - sculptures) help the country develop and grow.
4. ??????????

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

supports - floods - electricity - vegetables - temples

The High Dam helps people in many ways. Farmers use the dam's water to grow ①, fruits, and grains all year. The dam also sends ② to houses, schools, hospitals, and factories across Egypt. It protects cities from dangerous ③ and makes sure people have water even when the river is low. The dam is very important for Egypt's agriculture and energy. It ④ many families by providing food and power.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

Man-made resources are materials created by people using natural substances. Plastic is one such resource, made from oil and used for making bottles, toys, and school supplies. Glass is another important material, made by melting sand, and it is used in windows, mirrors, and cups. Bricks are made by mixing clay and water, then drying or baking the mixture. Bricks are strong and are commonly used in building houses, schools, and walls. These man-made resources play a vital role in our daily lives by helping us create useful objects and structures.

A

Choose the correct answer:

- Man-made resources are created using
 a) natural materials b) electricity c) machines d) plants
- Plastic is made from
 a) water b) oil c) sand d) clay

B

Answer the following questions:

- Give a suitable title to the text.
 ►
- How is glass made and what is it used for?
 ►
- Why are bricks important in building?
 ►

5

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- save - energy - turning - We - off - should - lights - by.
 ► ?
- inside - What - see - visitors - can - museum - the?
 ► ?

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Everyone at the school became a Water Saver. ()
2. The head teacher gave the friends new pencils. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. What happened to the children's message?



4. What fun activity did some classes start?



7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. We (have) lunch two ago.
2. You (must) wear a uniform at school.

8 Punctuate the following sentence

1. egypt has many valuable things under the ground



2. did you finish your homework yesterday



9 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"A Day in Al Galala City"

1. Where did you stay there?
2. What did you visit?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



The Water Savers

Story

حِمْاءِ الْماءِ

Learning Outcomes



Listening & Speaking

- Participate in pair or group discussions about the story and its moral
- Ask and answer simple questions about characters and events
- Role-play short conversations
- Present ideas clearly with confidence during speaking activities.



Reading

- Identify the main characters, setting, and key events in a short story
- Retell the sequence of events using their own words
- Understand the main idea and theme (e.g., *environmental responsibility, teamwork*)



Values

- Being a good citizen, working together and taking care of resources



Writing

- Make a poster or write a paragraph using story details and personal ideas
- Organize ideas in a logical sequence (*beginning, middle, end*)

The Characters الشخصيات



Noor



Ahmed



Farida



Mr. Youssef

Noor: She wrote down water problems around the school.

كتبت الملاحظات عن مشكلات المياه في المدرسة.

Ahmed: He used his tablet to take photos of water problems for their presentations.

استخدم جهازه اللوحي لالتقاط صور لمشكلات المياه لعرضها لاحقًا في العروض التقديمية.

Farida: She came up with the idea: "Let's be Water Savers!"

هي من اقترحت الفكرة: "لنكن حُماة الماء!"

She made colorful, cheerful posters with water-saving messages.

صنعت ملصقات ملونة ومبهجة تحتوي على رسائل لتوفير المياه.

The Teacher: She supported the friends' project and encourages them.

المعلمة: دعمت مشروع الأصدقاء وشجعتهم.

Mr. Youssef: The school cleaner who helped the friends with their project.

السيد يوسف: عامل النظافة في المدرسة الذي يساعد الأصدقاء في مشروعهم.

He helped the children by fixing a leaking sink.

ساعد الأطفال من خلال إصلاح صنوبر تسرب الماء.

He said that a small drip could waste liters of water each day.

يشرح كيف يمكن لقطرات الماء الصغيرة أن تهدر لترات من الماء يوميًا.

The Head Teacher: She gave Noor, Ahmed, and Farida certificates for their hard work.

منحت مديرة المدرسة نور وأحمد وفريدة شهادات تقدير على عملهم الجاد.

Setting الزمان والمكان

The time and place of the story

الزمان والمكان الذي تدور فيهما القصة.

- Time: The events take place during the day, starting one sunny morning.

الزمان: تدور الأحداث خلال النهار، بدءًا من صباح مشمس.

- Place: The main events take place at a school, including the bathroom, garden, classrooms, and the teacher's office.

المكان: تدور الأحداث الرئيسية في مدرسة، بما في ذلك الحمام، الحديقة، الفصول الدراسية، ومكتب المعلم.

الأحداث Plot

The main events in order.

تسلسل الأحداث الرئيسية.

- 1 The friends noticed a problem: Noor, Ahmed, and Farida noticed a dripping tap and a broken pipe.
الأصدقاء لاحظوا مشكلة: لاحظ نور وأحمد وفريدة صنبورًا يقطر وأنبوبًا مكسورًا.
- 2 They decided to take action: The friends came up with a plan to become "Water Savers."
قرر الأصدقاء اتخاذ إجراء: وضع الأصدقاء خطة ليصبحوا "موفرين للمياه".
- 3 They started the project: The friends documented problems, made posters, and talked to Mr. Youssef, the school cleaner.
بدأ الأصدقاء المشروع: وثق الأصدقاء المشكلات، وقاموا بعمل ملصقات، وتحدثوا مع السيد يوسف (عامل النظافة بالمدرسة).
- 4 The message spread: The school hung the posters, teachers talked about saving water, and classes had mini-challenges to see who could save the most!
انتشرت الرسالة: علقت المدرسة الملصقات، وتحدث المعلمون عن توفير المياه، وأقيمت تحديات صغيرة في الفصول لمعرفة من استطاع الحفاظ على المياه أكثر.
- 5 They got rewarded: The head teacher gave the friends certificates, and everyone in the school became a "Water Saver."
تم تكريمهم: منحت مديرة المدرسة الأصدقاء شهادات، وأصبح كل فرد في المدرسة "موفرًا للمياه".

الفكرة الرئيسية (الدرس المستفاد) Theme (Moral)

The message or lesson of the story.

الرسالة أو الدرس من القصة.

1 Small actions can make a big difference.

الأفعال الصغيرة يمكن أن تحدث فرقًا كبيرًا.

2 The importance of protecting natural resources.

أهمية حماية الموارد الطبيعية.

3 Courage to stand up for what is right.

الشجاعة لدعم ما هو صحيح.

القاموس المصور Picture Dictionary



drip

يقطر



overflow

يفيض



puddle

بركة ماء



leak

يتسرب - تسرب



hallway

ممر



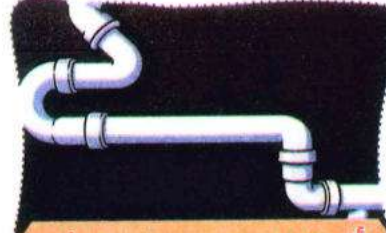
hose

خرطوم



tap

صنبور



pipe

أنبوب



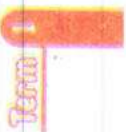
drop

قطرة



Definitions تعريفات

dripping	falling in small drops, such as water from a tap
precious	something that is very valuable and must be protected
resources	natural things that people use, like water, air, or energy
snap (her fingers)	to make a quick sound with your fingers, a sign of having an idea
curious	wanting to know or learn more
leaky	letting water or air escape through a hole or crack
overflow	to go over the edge, for example, when a sink is too full
puddles	small pools of water on the ground
cheerful	happy, positive, bright, and friendly
fix	to repair something that is broken
spread	to move to more people or places, like news or ideas
mini-challenges	small, fun competitions to see who can do something best



Part 1

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

bright	مشرق - مليء بالحياة	waste (v)	يهدر
busy	مزدحم - مليء بالنشاط	precious	ثمين
friends	أصدقاء	resources	موارد
sunny	مشمس	careless	مهمل
dripping	يقطر	snap (her fingers)	تطقطق بأصابعها
bathroom	حمام	project	مشروع
garden	حديقة	wisely	بحكمة
overflowed	فاض	free	مجاني
broken pipe	أنبوب مكسور	puddles	برك مياه صغيرة
office	مكتب	plan	خطة
idea	فكرة	help (n) (v)	مساعدة - يساعد

Important Phrases

عبارات هامة

looking for ways	يبحثون عن طرق	couldn't afford	لا يمكننا تحمل
made them stop	جعلهم يتوقفون	full of ideas	ملئمة بالأفكار
even when no one used it	حتى عندما لم يكن أحد يستخدمه	small actions matter	الأفعال الصغيرة لها تأثير
take better care	نعتني بشكل أفضل	go for it	نفذوا الفكرة - انطلقوا فيها
smiled brightly	ابتسمت ابتسامة مشرقة	let me know	أخبروني
one sunny morning	في صباح مشمس	shaking her head	تحرك رأسها نفيًا

Part 1

In a bright and busy school, three friends—Noor, Ahmed, and Farida—were always looking for ways to help. One sunny morning, they noticed something that made them stop. A tap in the school bathroom kept dripping, even when no



one used it. In the garden, water overflowed from a broken pipe and formed little puddles near the **walkway**.

في مدرسة مشرقية ومزدحمة، كان هناك ثلاثة أصدقاء - نور، وأحمد، وفريدة - يبحثون دائماً عن طرق للمساعدة. في صباح مشمس، لاحظوا شيئاً جعلهم يتوقفون. كان هناك صنوبر في حمام المدرسة يقطر الماء باستمرار، حتى عندما لا يستخدمه أحد. وفي الحديقة، كان الماء يفيض من أنبوب مكسور ويُشكّل برّكاً صغيرة بالقرب من الممشى.

"We waste too much water," Noor said, shaking her head. She watched the drops fall one after another, knowing they were too precious to waste. Ahmed agreed, "We need to take better care of our resources." he said. "We can't afford to be careless."

قالت نور وهي تهز رأسها: "نحن نُهدر الكثير من الماء." كانت تراقب القطرات وهي تسقط واحدة تلو الأخرى، مدركة أنها ثمينة جداً لئُهدر. وافقها أحمد الرأي قائلاً: "نحتاج أن نعتني بمواردنا بشكل أفضل." "لا يمكننا التصرف بإهمال."

Farida, always full of ideas, snapped her fingers. "Let's do something about it! We can be *Water Savers*! We can show everyone that small actions matter."

فريدة، التي كانت دائماً مليئة بالأفكار، طقطقت بأصابعها قائلة: "لنقم بشيء حيال ذلك! يمكننا أن نكون حماة الماء! يمكننا أن نري الجميع أن الأفعال الصغيرة لها أثر كبير."

They went to their teacher's office and explained their plan. "We want to do a project to help our school use water wisely," Noor explained. Their teacher smiled brightly "That's a wonderful idea. Go for it—and let me know how I can help."

ذهبوا إلى مكتب المُعلّمة وشرحوا خطتهم. قالت نور: "نريد أن نقوم بمشروع لمساعدة مدرستنا على استخدام الماء بحكمة." ابتسمت المُعلّمة ابتسامة مشرقة وقالت: "إنها فكرة رائعة. انطلقوا - وأخبروني كيف يمكنني المساعدة."

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. Who are the main characters in the story?

من هم الشخصيات الرئيسية في القصة؟

► Noor, Ahmed, and Farida.

نور، أحمد، وفريدة.

2. Where does the story take place?

أين تدور أحداث القصة؟

► In a bright and busy school.

في مدرسة مشرقة ومزدحمة.

3. What did the friends notice in the school bathroom?

ماذا لاحظ الأصدقاء في حمام المدرسة؟

► They saw a tap dripping even when no one used it.

رأوا صنبورًا يقطر حتى عندما لا يستخدمه أحد.

4. What was happening in the garden?

ماذا كان يحدث في الحديقة؟

► Water was overflowing from a broken pipe and making puddles.

كان الماء يفيض من أنبوب مكسور ويُشكّل بركًا.

5. How did Noor feel when she saw the dripping tap?

كيف شعرت نور عندما رأت الصنبور يقطر؟

► She was sad and worried.

شعرت بالانزعاج والقلق.

6. What did Noor say about the water?

ماذا قالت نور عن الماء؟

► She said "We waste too much water".

قالت نحن نهدر الكثير من الماء.

7. What did Ahmed say about the water problem?

ماذا كان رأي أحمد في مشكلة الماء؟

► He said that people should take better care of resources.

قال إن على الناس أن يعتنوا بالموارد بشكل أفضل.

8. What did Ahmed say about how people use resources?

ماذا قال أحمد عن كيفية استخدام الناس للموارد؟

► He said they couldn't afford to be careless.

قال إنهم لا يستطيعون أن يكونوا مهملين.

9. Who had an idea to fix the water problem?

من الذي كان لديه فكرة لحل مشكلة الماء؟

► Farida.

10. What name did Farida suggest for their group?

ما الاسم الذي اقترحته فريدة لمجموعتهم؟

► Water Savers.

حافظو الماء.

11. What was Farida's idea?

ماذا كانت فكرة فريدة؟

► To start a project and encourage others to save water.

أن يبدأوا مشروعًا ويشجعوا الآخرين على توفير الماء.

12. What did the children do after they came up with the idea?

ماذا فعل الأطفال بعد أن وجدوا الفكرة؟

► They went to their teacher's office to share their plan.

ذهبوا إلى مكتب المعلمة ليشرحوا خطتهم.

13. How did the teacher react to their plan?

كيف كان رد فعل المعلمة تجاه خطتهم؟

► The teacher smiled and supported their idea.

ابتسمت المعلمة ودعمت فكرتهم.

14. What did Noor say to the teacher?

ماذا قالت نور للمعلمة؟

► She said, "We want to do a project to help our school use water wisely."

قالت: نريد أن نقوم بمشروع لمساعدة مدرستنا على استخدام الماء بحكمة.

15. What message did the children want to share with others?

ما الرسالة التي أراد الأطفال مشاركتها مع الآخرين؟

► That small actions can make a big difference.

أن الأفعال الصغيرة يمكن أن تُحدث فرقًا كبيرًا.

16. What does the story teach about teamwork?

ماذا تُعلمنا القصة عن العمل الجماعي؟

▶ The friends worked together and shared ideas to solve a problem.

تعاون الأصدقاء وتبادلوا الأفكار لحل المشكلة.

17. Why do you think the teacher supported their project?

لماذا تعتقد أن المُعلمة دعمت مشروعهم؟

▶ Because it was a positive and helpful idea.

لأنها فكرة إيجابية ومفيدة.

18. What is the main problem in the story?

ما المشكلة الرئيسية في القصة؟

▶ Wasting water in the school.

إهدار الماء في المدرسة.

19. How did the friends show responsibility?

كيف أظهر الأصدقاء المسؤولية؟

▶ They noticed a problem and took action to fix it.

لاحظوا المشكلة واتخذوا خطوة لإصلاحها.

20. What can we learn from this story about saving water?

ماذا يمكن أن نتعلم من هذه القصة عن توفير الماء؟

▶ That everyone can help save water by making small changes.

أن كل شخص يمكنه المساعدة في توفير الماء من خلال تغييرات بسيطة.

Exercises on Part 1

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The three friends were always looking for ways to help. (.....)
2. The tap in the school bathroom was working perfectly. (.....)
3. The puddles were found inside the classroom. (.....)
4. The teacher did not like the friends' idea. (.....)
5. Water was overflowing in the school garden from a broken pipe. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The three friends noticed a leaky tap and a broken pipe in the

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| a) classroom | b) teacher's office |
| c) bathroom and garden | d) cafeteria |

2. Ahmed said they needed to take better care of their
 - a) school supplies
 - b) friends
 - c) resources
 - d) money
3. Farida had an idea to become " ".
 - a) Water Savers
 - b) Water Artists
 - c) Water Watchers
 - d) Water Cleaners
4. The teacher thought the friends' idea was
 - a) bad
 - b) boring
 - c) difficult
 - d) wonderful
5. Noor said that water is too to waste.
 - a) dirty
 - b) cold
 - c) precious
 - d) common

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

dripping - friends - teacher - water - idea

Noor, Ahmed, and Farida were three ① who noticed a ② tap at school. They thought it was important to save ③, and Farida had a great ④ They went to their ⑤ and explained their plan.

4 Answer the following questions:

1. What was happening in the garden?
▶
2. What is the main problem in the story?
▶
3. What did the children want to do to help their school?
▶
4. Who had the idea to start the project?
▶
5. How did the teacher feel about their idea?
▶

Part 2

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

notebook	دفتر ملاحظات	fix	يُصلح
curious	فضولي - محب للاستطلاع	leaks	تسريبات
leaky	مُسْرَب	cleaner	عامل نظافة
running (water)	الماء الجاري (المتدفق)	leaking sink	حوض مُسْرَب للماء
hoses	خراطيم	drip	قطرة
presentations	عروض تقديمية	liters	لترات
posters	ملصقات	carefully	بعناية
markers	أقلام تلوين	bullying	التنمر
cheerful	مُبتهج	protect	يحمي
brushing	تنظيف الأسنان	proud	فخور
firmly	بثبات - بحزم	colored markers	أقلام تلوين

Important Phrases

عبارات هامة

began their work	بدأوا عملهم	taking action	يتخذون إجراء
walking around the school	يتجولون في المدرسة	watched him fix	راقبوه وهو يُصلح
wrote down everything	كتبوا كل شيء	waste liters of water	يهدر لترات من الماء
looked him in the eye	نظرت إليه مباشرة في عينيه	listened carefully	استمعوا بانتباه
for too long	لفترة طويلة جدًا	learned a lot	تعلموا كثيرًا
take photos	يلتقط الصور	said unkindly	قال بطريقة غير لطيفة

Turn off the tap while brushing!

أغلق الصنبور أثناء تنظيف الأسنان!

stood beside her

وقفوا بجانبها

Every drop counts.

كل قطرة تهم.

believed in what they were doing

كانوا يؤمنون بما يفعلونه

Fix leaks fast!

أصلح التسريبات بسرعة!

surprised but pleased

مندهش لكنه سعيد

water is life

الماء هو الحياة

Part 2

The next day, the three friends got to work. They started by walking around the school with a notebook, a camera, and curious eyes. Noor wrote down everything she noticed: leaky taps, students leaving water running while washing their hands, and hoses left on for too long in the garden.



Ahmed used his tablet to take photos of the problems so they could show them later in their presentations. Farida, the artist, brought out her colored markers and made bright, cheerful posters. One read: "Turn off the tap while brushing!" Another said: "Every drop counts. Fix leaks fast!"

في اليوم التالي، بدأ الأصدقاء الثلاثة العمل. بدأوا بالتجول في أرجاء المدرسة ومعهم دفتر ملاحظات، وكاميرا، وعيون فضولية. كتبت نور كل ما لاحظته: الصنابير التي تُسرب المياه، والطلاب الذين يتركون الماء يجري أثناء غسل أيديهم، والخراطيم التي تُترك تعمل لفترة طويلة في الحديقة. استخدم أحمد جهازه اللوحي لالتقاط صور للمشكلات حتى يتمكنوا من عرضها لاحقًا في عروضهم التقديمية. أما فريدة، الفنانة، فأحضرت أقلامها الملونة وصنعت ملصقات زاهية ومبهجة. إحداها كتب عليها: "أغلق الصنبور أثناء تنظيف أسنانك!" وكتب على أخرى: "كل قطرة مهمة. أصلح التسريبات بسرعة!"

They also spoke to the school cleaner, Mr. Youssef, who was surprised but pleased to see the students taking action. "I'd love your help," he said as they watched him fix a leaking sink. He explained that a small drip could waste liters of water each day. The kids listened carefully and learned a lot. But not everyone understood their role. One afternoon, a classmate said to them unkindly near the hallway, "Why do you care about water so much? It's just a few drops."

وتحدثوا أيضًا إلى عامل النظافة في المدرسة، الأستاذ يوسف، الذي فوجئ برؤيتهم، لكنه كان مسرورًا برؤية الطلاب يتخذون خطوات عملية. قال: "يسعدني مساعدتكم"، بينما كانوا يشاهدونه وهو يصلح حوضًا فيه تسريب. وشرح لهم كيف يمكن لقطرة صغيرة أن تهدر لترات من الماء يوميًا. استمع الأطفال بانتباه وتعلموا الكثير. لكن، لم يفهم الجميع دورهم. في أحد الأيام، قال زميل لهم في الفصل بسخرية قرب الممر: "لماذا تهتمون كثيرًا بالماء؟ إنها مجرد قطرات قليلة فقط."

Noor looked him in the eye. "Because water is life," She said firmly. "We all need it, and we all need to protect it."

Her friends stood beside her, proud and quiet. They didn't let the **bullying** stop them. They believed in what they were doing.

نظرت إليه نور بثبات وقالت بحزم: "لأن الماء هو الحياة." نحن جميعًا نحتاج إليه، ويجب علينا جميعًا أن نحمله. وقف أصدقاؤها إلى جانبها، بفخر وهدوء، ولم يسمحوا للتممر أن يثنيهم. كانوا يؤمنون بما يفعلونه.

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. What did the three friends bring with them on their walk around the school?
ماذا أحضر الأصدقاء الثلاثة معهم أثناء جولتهم في المدرسة؟
▶ They brought a notebook and a camera, and curious eyes.
أحضروا دفتر ملاحظات، وكاميرا، وعيونًا فضولية.
2. What was Noor responsible for during their project work?
ما الذي كانت نور مسؤولة عنه أثناء عملهم في المشروع؟
▶ To write down everything she noticed, like leaky taps and running water.
أن تكتب كل ما تلاحظه، مثل الصنابير التي تسرب والماء الجاري.

3. What was Ahmed using to help the project?

ما الذي كان أحمد يستخدمه للمساعدة في المشروع؟

► He used his tablet to take photos of the problems.

استخدم جهازه اللوحي لالتقاط صور للمشاكل.

4. How did Ahmed plan to use the photos he took?

كيف خطط أحمد لاستخدام الصور التي التقطها؟

► He would show them in presentations later.

كان سيعرضها في عروض تقديمية لاحقًا.

5. What was Farida's role in the project?

ماذا كان دور فريدة في المشروع؟

► She made bright, cheerful posters with her colored markers.

قامت بصنع ملصقات مشرقة ومبهجة باستخدام أقلامها الملونة.

6. What did one of Farida's posters say?

ماذا كان مكتوبًا على أحد ملصقات فريدة؟

► "Turn off the tap while brushing!"

"أغلق الصنبور أثناء تنظيف الأسنان!"

8. Who did the children speak to during their project?

مع من تحدث الأطفال أثناء مشروعهم؟

► They spoke to Mr. Youssef, the school cleaner.

تحدثوا مع الأستاذ يوسف، عامل النظافة في المدرسة.

9. How did Mr. Youssef react to their interest in saving water?

كيف كان رد فعل الأستاذ يوسف تجاه اهتمامهم بتوفير الماء؟

► He was surprised but pleased.

كان مندهشًا لكنه مسرور.

10. What was Mr. Youssef doing when the children met him?

ماذا كان يفعل الأستاذ يوسف عندما قابله الأطفال؟

► He was fixing a leaking sink.

كان يُصلح حوضًا يسرب الماء.

11. What did Mr. Youssef explain about water leaks?

ماذا شرح الأستاذ يوسف عن تسريبات المياه؟

► A small drip can waste liters of water each day.

قطرة ماء صغيرة يمكن أن تهدر لترات من الماء يوميًا.

12. How did the children respond to Mr. Youssef's explanation?

كيف استجاب الأطفال لشرح الأستاذ يوسف؟

► They listened carefully and learned a lot.

استمعوا بعناية وتعلموا الكثير.

13. What did a classmate say to them one afternoon?

ماذا قال لهم أحد زملائهم في أحد الأيام بعد الظهر؟

► "Why do you care about water so much? It's just a few drops."

"لماذا تهتمون بالماء كثيراً؟ إنها مجرد قطرات."

14. How did Noor respond to the classmate's comment?

كيف ردت نور على تعليق زميلها؟

► She said firmly, "Because water is life."

قالت بحزم: "لأن الماء هو الحياة."

15. What reason did Noor give for caring about water?

ما السبب الذي أعطته نور لاهتمامها بالماء؟

► She said, "We all need it, and we all need to protect it."

قالت: "كلنا نحتاج إليه، وكلنا يجب أن نحميه."

16. What did Noor's friends do when she faced to the classmate?

ماذا فعل أصدقاء نور عندما واجهت زميلها؟

► They stood beside her, proud and quiet.

وقفوا بجانبها، بفخر وصمت.

17. Did the unkind comment stop the children from continuing their work?

هل أوقفهم التعليق غير اللطيف عن متابعة عملهم؟

► No, they did not let the bullying stop them.

لا، لم يسمحوا للتنمر أن يوقفهم.

19. What does the story teach about supporting what is right?

ماذا تُعلمنا القصة عن دعم ما هو صحيح؟

► It teaches us to speak up and stay strong, even when others don't agree.

تُعلمنا أن نعبر عن رأينا ونبقى أقوياء حتى إذا لم يوافقنا الآخرون.

20. What is the main theme of this part of the story?

ما الموضوع الرئيسي في هذا الجزء من القصة؟

► Taking action to save water and standing up for what is right.

اتخاذ خطوات لتوفير الماء والدفاع عما هو صائب.

Exercises on Part

2

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The friends started their work with a notebook, a camera, and curious eyes. (.....)
2. Ahmed made posters with colored markers. (.....)
3. Mr. Youssef said a small drip could waste liters of water each day. (.....)
4. The friends didn't continue the project when they heard their unkind classmate. (.....)
5. Farida took photos of the water problems around the school. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Farida, the artist, made
 a) presentations b) posters c) videos d) speeches
2. Mr. Youssef was a
 a) teacher b) student c) school cleaner d) gardener
3. A classmate said to the friends
 a) "You are doing a great job!"
 b) "Why do you care about water so much?"
 c) "I want to help you." d) "I will fix the leaks."
4. Ahmed used his tablet to of the problems.
 a) draw pictures b) take notes c) take photos d) write a story
5. The students learned that a small drip could waste
 a) nothing at all b) just a few drops
 c) liters of water d) time only

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

posters - fixing - water - bullying - leaky

The friends walked around with a notebook and a camera to find
 ① taps. Farida made cheerful ② They spoke to Mr.
 Youssef, who was ③ a sink. They did not let the ④
 stop them because they believed in what they were doing to protect
 ⑤

4 Answer the following questions:

1. What did the three friends bring with them on their walk around the school?
 ▶
2. What was Farida's role in the project?
 ▶
3. What did Noor say to the unkind classmate?
 ▶
4. Why didn't the friends stop their project?
 ▶
5. What did the posters say?
 ▶

Part 3

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

message	رسالة	save	يُوفّر - يُحافظ
spread	ينتشر	mini-challenges	تحديات صغيرة
hung	غلق	certificates	شهادات
bathrooms	الحمامات	achievement	إنجاز
classrooms	الفصول الدراسية	hard work	عمل شاق
garden taps	صنابير الحديقة	head teacher	مدير - مديرة المدرسة

Important Phrases

عبارات هامة

began to spread

بدأ بالانتشار

gave certificates of achievement

منح شهادات تقدير

hung their posters

علّقوا ملصقاتهم

for their hard work

لجهودهم الكبيرة

took a few minutes

أخذوا بضع دقائق

from that day on

من ذلك اليوم فصاعدًا

talk about how to save water

التحدث عن كيفية توفير الماء

everyone became a Water Saver

أصبح الجميع محافظًا على الماء

who could save the most

من استطاع توفير أكثر

Part 3

Soon, their message began to spread. The school hung their posters in bathrooms, classrooms, and near garden taps. Teachers took a few minutes each day to talk about how to save water. Some classes even had mini-challenges to see who could save the most!



One morning, the head teacher gave the children, Noor, Ahmed, and Farida certificates of achievement for their hard work. From that day on, everyone at the school became a *Water Saver*.

سرعان ما بدأ رسالتهم تنتشر. علّقت المدرسة ملصقاتهم في الحمامات، والفصول الدراسية، وبالقرب من صنابير الحديقة. كان المعلمون يخصصون بضع دقائق يوميًا للحديث عن كيفية ترشيد استهلاك المياه. حتى أن بعض الصفوف أقامت تحديات صغيرة لمعرفة من يمكنه توفير أكبر كمية من الماء.

وفي صباح أحد الأيام، قدّمت مديرة المدرسة شهادات تقدير للأطفال نور وأحمد وفريدة تقديرًا لجهودهم الكبيرة. ومنذ ذلك اليوم، أصبح كل من في المدرسة من "حماة الماء".

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. What happened to the children's message?

ماذا حدث لرسالة الأطفال؟

▶ It began to spread.

بدأت تنتشر.

2. Where did the school hang the posters?

أين علقت المدرسة الملصقات؟

▶ In bathrooms, classrooms, and near garden taps.

في الحمامات، والفصول الدراسية، وبالقرب من صنابير الحديقة.

3. What did the teachers do each day to support the project?

ماذا كان يفعل المعلمون كل يوم لدعم المشروع؟

▶ They talked for a few minutes about how to save water.

كانوا يتحدثون لبضع دقائق عن كيفية توفير الماء.

4. What fun activity did some classes start?

ما النشاط الممتع الذي بدأت به بعض الفصول؟

▶ Mini-challenges to see who could save the most water.

تحديات صغيرة لمعرفة من يستطيع توفير أكبر قدر من الماء.

5. Who gave the children certificates?

من قدّم الشهادات للأطفال؟

▶ The head teacher.

مديرة المدرسة.

6. What did the head teacher give them?

ماذا أعطتهم مديرة المدرسة؟

▶ Certificates of achievement.

شهادات تقدير.

7. Why did they take the certificate?

لماذا حصلوا علي الشهادات؟

▶ For their hard work.

لجهودهم الكبيرة.

8. What did Noor, Ahmed, and Farida receive?

ماذا تلقى نور وأحمد وفريدة؟

▶ Certificates of achievement.

شهادات تقدير.

9. What happened after they received the certificates?

ماذا حدث بعد أن تلقوا الشهادات؟

▶ Everyone at the school became a *Water Saver*.

أصبح كل شخص في المدرسة من حماة الماء.

10. What is the result of the children's project?

ما نتيجة مشروع الأطفال؟

▶ The whole school shared in saving water.

أصبحت المدرسة كلها تشارك في توفير الماء.

Exercises on Part 3

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The friends' message began to spread in the school. (.....)
2. The head teacher gave the friends money. (.....)
3. Everyone at the school became a *Water Saver*. (.....)
4. Teachers ignored the posters and the friends' message. (.....)
5. The head teacher gave the children certificates during the afternoon. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The school hung the posters in the
 - a) office
 - b) playground
 - c) bathrooms and classrooms
 - d) library
2. Some classes had mini-challenges to see who could
 - a) draw the best picture
 - b) save the most water
 - c) run the fastest
 - d) solve the most math problems
3. The head teacher gave the friends
 - a) new pencils
 - b) certificates of achievement
 - c) a new camera
 - d) a new notebook

4. The posters were also hung near the
 a) school gate b) library c) garden taps d) canteen
5. Noor, Ahmed, and Farida were rewarded for their
 a) homework b) fun c) art skills d) hard work

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

spread - certificates - Water Saver - challenges - posters

The friends' message began to ① Teachers talked about saving water, and some classes had mini- ② The school hung the friends' ③ in classrooms and bathrooms. The head teacher gave the friends ④ of achievement. From that day, everyone at the school became a ⑤

4

Answer the following questions:

- Where did the school hang the posters?
▶
- What did Noor, Ahmed, and Farida receive?
▶
- What did teachers do to support the water-saving project?
▶
- How do you think the students felt after receiving the certificates?
▶
- What was the result of the friends' project?
▶

General Questions

1

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- The story is about three friends who loved to waste water. (.....)
- The friends used posters and photos to share their message. (.....)

3. A small drip of water is not a problem. (.....)
4. The friends received certificates for their hard work. (.....)
5. The head teacher was angry about the students' water-saving project. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The friends noticed a dripping tap and a leaky pipe at
 a) home b) the park c) the school d) a hospital
2. The main message of the story is about the importance of
 a) art b) friendship c) saving water d) playing games
3. The friends' project was supported by the
 a) head teacher b) school cleaner c) teachers d) all of them
4. The friends were called "Water Savers" because they
 a) cleaned the school
 b) helped the school use water wisely
 c) taught a class d) played in puddles
5. Farida helped the project by
 a) writing notes b) fixing taps
 c) taking photos d) making posters

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

project - posters - cleaner - certificates - save

Noor, Ahmed, and Farida were three friends who started a ① to help their school ② water. They made ③ and spoke to Mr. Youssef, the school ④ Their hard work was recognized when they received ⑤ of achievement.

4 Answer the following questions:

1. What problem did the friends see at the beginning of the story?



2. What were the results of the friends' project?
▶
3. How did the friends collect information about water waste in the school?
▶
4. What did Farida do to support the project?
▶
5. How did the teacher and school respond to the students' idea?
▶

S.B.

1 Read and write who said this?

1. "We waste too much water." (.....)
2. "We need to take better care of our resources." (.....)
3. "Let's do something about it! We can be Water Savers!" (.....)
4. "That's a wonderful idea. Go for it - and let me know how I can help." (.....)
5. "I'd love your help." (.....)

2 Match the words in column (A) with their meanings in column (B):

'A'

1. dripping
2. resources
3. leaky

'B'

- a) things we use to live (e.g. water)
- b) having holes or cracks
- c) flowing in small drops

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Noor, Ahmed, and Farida were worried about the water because they
 a) wanted to play in the puddles b) wanted to save water
 c) disliked the school garden d) wanted to skip class

- 4** Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 5** Read and put the events in order:

- # Termin 1

6 Complete the summary of the story with these words:

teamwork - precious - spread - document - wasted

In a school near Luxor, three friends—Noor, Ahmed, and Farida—notice water being ① from leaky taps and broken pipes. Concerned about saving this ② resource, they start a project called "Water Savers." They make posters with helpful messages about the problem, and learn from the school cleaner how small leaks waste a lot of water. Despite some bullying, they go on. Their efforts ③, helping students and teachers to save water through daily actions and fun challenges. The story shows how ④ and small actions can make a big difference.

7 Answer the following questions:

1. Why is saving water important?



2. How can small actions make a big difference?



3. Can one person really make a difference? Why - why not?



4. What are three things you can do at home to save water?



The Story Answers

Exercises on Part 1

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. T 2. F 3. F
4. F 5. T

2. Choose the correct answer

1. (c) bathroom and garden
2. (c) resources
3. (a) Water Savers
4. (d) wonderful
5. (c) precious

3. Read and complete the text :

1. friends 2. dripping
3. water 4. idea
5. teacher

4. Answer the following questions:

1. Water was overflowing from a broken pipe and making puddles.
2. Wasting water in the school.
3. They wanted to fix the water problem.
4. Farida
5. He felt it was a wonderful idea.

Exercises on Part 2

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. T 2. F 3. T
4. F 5. F

2. Choose the correct answer

1. (b) posters
2. (c) school cleaner
3. (b) "Why do you care about water so much?"
4. (c) take photos.
5. (c) liters of water

3. Read and complete the text :

1. leaky 2. posters
3. fixing 4. bullying
5. water

4. Answer the following questions:

1. They brought a notebook and a camera.
2. She made bright ,cheerful posters with her colored markers.
3. Nour said" ,Water is life."
4. Because they did not let the bullying stop them.
5. Turn off the tap while brushing"!

Exercises on Part 3

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. T 2. F 3. T
4. F 5. F

2. Choose the correct answer

1. (c) bathrooms and classrooms
2. (b) save the most water
3. (b) certificates of achievement
4. (c) garden taps
5. (d) hard work

3. Read and complete the text :

1. spread 2. challenges
3. posters 4. certificates
5. Water Saver

4. Answer the following questions:

1. In bathrooms ,classrooms ,and near garden taps.
2. Certificates of achievement.
3. Teachers took a few minutes each day to talk about how to save water.
4. I think they felt proud.
5. Everyone at the school became a Water Saver.

(The whole school shared in saving

Unit 6

water.)

General on Questions

1. Read and write T) True (or F) False: (

1. F 2. T 3. F
4. T 5. F

2. Choose the correct answer

1. (c) the school
2. (c) saving water
3. (d) all of them
4. (b) helped the school use water wisely
5. (d) making posters

3. Read and complete the text :

1. project 2. save
3. posters 4. cleaner
5. certificates

4. Answer the following questions:

1. They saw a tap dripping even when no one used it.
2. The whole school shared in saving water and everyone became a Water Saver.
3. Noor wrote down everything she noticed and Ahmed took photos.
4. She made posters.
5. Teachers took a few minutes each day to talk about how to save water.

1. Read and write who said this?

1. Nour 2. Ahmed
3. Farida 4. The teacher
5. Mr. Youssef

2. Match:

- (1. c) dripping: flowing in small drops
(2. a) resources: things we use to live (e.g water)
(3. b) leaky: having holes or cracks

3. Choose the correct answer:

1. (b) wanted to save water
2. (b) colored markers
3. (b) Even small amounts of water matter
4. (b) he cared about saving water

4. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. T 2. F 3. F
4. T 5. T 6. T

5. Read and put the events in order:

1. The friends see water leaking in the bathroom.
2. The teacher was excited about the project.
3. The students make posters and take photos.
4. Noor, Ahmed and Farida talk to Mr. Youssef, the cleaner.
5. A classmate bullies the Water Savers group.
6. The school starts water saving challenges.

6. Complete the summary of the story with these words:

1. wasted 2. precious
3. spread 4. teamwork

7. Answer the following questions:

1. Because water is too precious to waste and we need to take better care of our resources.
2. A small drip can waste liters of water each day.
3. Yes, because one person's idea can make great changes.
(Any acceptable answer)
4. We can turn off taps during brushing, fix leaky sinks and pipes and use water wisely.

Part 3

Listening Scripts



Listening Scripts

Practice 2 on Unit 1

The school day begins at 7:30. We start it by standing in line, saluting the flag, and singing the national anthem. Then we go to our classrooms and begin our lessons. Our first subject is usually Arabic.

Next, we have subjects like math, English, and science. Some topics are a bit tricky, but I try my best. At around 10:15, we have a short break. I usually eat a sandwich, play with my friends, chat and laugh.

Practice 4 on Unit 2

Last week we had an interesting lesson about protecting the Earth. Pollution is harmful to animals and people. We should recycle things like plastic and glass. Clean energy like solar power is better for nature. We must keep our environment safe and clean.

Practice 6 on Unit 3

There are many important jobs in all communities. A paramedic helps people during an emergency. The architects work hard on huge buildings. The traffic officer controls the public transport. The police men work hard to make a safe community.

Revision 7 on Units 1-2-3

Hello from Cairo, Egypt! Today is a beautiful, sunny day. The weather is perfect for a trip. My family and I are planning to visit "Ras Mohamed National Park" in Sharm El Sheikh. It's a special place where we can see amazing coral reefs and colorful fish. I love learning about places around Egypt.

Practice 10 on Unit 4

We need to use clean energy to protect our planet. Solar power is a smart choice because it does not pollute the air. By using solar panels, we can make electricity without causing harm to nature. This helps slow down climate change and keeps our Earth safe. Clean energy is better for the future, the environment, and all living things that share our beautiful planet.

Practice 12 on Unit 5

Modern technology, like solar stations, helps reduce pollution. The Benban Solar Park in Egypt provides electricity to nearby villages. Ancient Egyptians believed the Lotus Chalice meant eternal life. Solar energy is ideal for Egypt because it's so sunny! This clean energy helps our planet and powers our homes."

Revision 13 on Units 4-5

A long time ago, in a village by the Nile River, an old farmer lived with his three sons. The farm was large and gave plenty of food. But the sons often fought about who worked the hardest, who watered the crops, and who fed the animals. This made their father very worried.

ENGLISH

6th Prim.
2026

FIRST TERM



**Evaluations, Units Revision,
Exams, & Answers Key**

By a group of specialists

Contents

Pages

Part 1

Revision on Unit (1)

3

Revision on Unit (2)

11

Revision on Unit (3)

19

Revision on Unit (4)

27

Revision on Unit (5)

35

Part 2

Weekly Evaluations

44

Part 3

Al-Azhar Practice

54

Part 4

General Practice

63

Part 5

Listening Scripts

86

Part 6

Answers Key

88

Revision on Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. My sister likes to wear a beautiful around her neck.
a) lamps b) necklace c) clothes d) bracelets
2. A is a special tool used to weave wool.
a) loom b) fishing net c) wooden boat d) lamp
3. My father likes to from the sea.
a) bake bread b) repair boats c) feed animals d) catch fish
4. We must to be ready for the new day at school.
a) stand in line b) play games c) swim d) go shopping
5. The farmer works hard to in the fields.
a) spin wool b) weave wool c) bake bread d) harvest crops
6. We went to a to see old Egyptian things.
a) fish factory b) National Park
c) museum d) factory
7. I need to before I go to school.
a) go to bed b) pack my school bag
c) catch fish d) play music
8. A carpenter makes chairs and tables.
a) wet b) stormy c) wooden d) windy
9. I always visit the Grand Egyptian
a) Museum b) school c) cinema d) shop
10. The water is very clear, so we can and see the fish.
a) drive b) walk c) snorkel d) catch fish
11. My dad likes to and explore the beautiful scenery.
a) have breakfast b) take photos
c) repair boats d) stand in line
12. A/An is an area of land with high rocks that you can climb.
a) National Park b) mountain c) island d) beach
13. The museum has different from ancient times.
a) old coins b) lamp c) cloth d) bracelet

Revision

14. On the farm, the children help to and give them water.
 a) harvest crops b) make furniture
 c) repair boats d) feed animals
15. My father and I went to the sea to using his boat.
 a) bake bread b) repair boats c) catch fish d) grow fruits
16. My grandmother uses a loom to and make carpets.
 a) cook a meal b) weave wool c) bake bread d) get dressed
17. We went to a to see the wild animals and plants.
 a) fish factory b) restaurant c) museum d) national park
18. The children love to in the lake on hot days.
 a) swim b) climb c) walk d) run

2

Choose the correct answer:

(Grammar)

1. How do we to the museum?
 a) gets b) getting c) got d) get
2. Do live in Cairo?
 a) he b) she c) they d) Ali
3. Hend to school every day.
 a) go b) goes c) going d) went
4. They a new car.
 a) having b) has c) have d) are
5. We on the beach in the summer.
 a) are playing b) plays c) playing d) play
6. She her teeth every morning.
 a) brush b) brushes c) brushing d) brushed
7. He not eat meat.
 a) do b) are c) is d) does
8. Where he live?
 a) do b) does c) are d) is
9. They watch TV at night.
 a) do not b) does not c) is not d) are not
10. She like chocolate.
 a) do not b) is not c) does not d) are not

11. The sun in the east.
a) rise b) rises c) rising d) rose
12. She doesn't in a big city.
a) lived b) living c) lives d) live
13. The children play in the street.
a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) aren't
14. Does he English?
a) speaks b) speaking c) spoke d) speak
15. Does she to the market on Friday?
a) went b) goes c) going d) go
16. the cat sleep all day?
a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Are
17. you like pizza?
a) Is b) Does c) Do d) Are
18. What you do?
a) do b) does c) are d) is
19. When they go to the park?
a) is b) does c) are d) do
20. Why she like dogs?
a) do b) are c) does d) is

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My sister (read) a book every evening.
2. (Does) you like to eat pizza?
3. We (doesn't) live in a small apartment.
4. Where do the children (plays) after school?
5. He (drink) milk every morning.
6. The students (does) their homework at night.
7. My friends (not play) football on Tuesdays.
8. (Do) your brother watch movies?
9. We (goes) to the beach every summer.
10. Where do you (studies) for your exams?
11. The cat (sleep) on the sofa all day.
12. How (do) he travel to school?

Revision

13. She (not like) to drink coffee in the morning.
14. The sun (not shine) at night.
15. What (do) the teacher teach?
16. The birds (sings) in the morning.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pack – stand – dressed – wake up – drink

Every day I have the same routine. In the morning, I ❶ at 6:00 a.m. and get ❷ for school. After I have breakfast, my mom prepares eggs and bread. I ❸ my school bag with my books and lunchbox. At school, we ❹ in line to salute the flag before class.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

nets – fishermen – wooden – catch – go

Everywhere you go, you can see different jobs. In my village, ❶ wake up early to ❷ fish in the sea. They use ❸ boats and strong fishing ❹ Sometimes, they repair boats after storms. I love watching them bring fresh fish to the market.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

harvest – fruits – feed – villagers – houses

There are hundreds of villages in our country, Egypt. My grandparents live on a farm in a village. They grow ❶ like mangoes and dates. In autumn, they ❷ the crops and sell them. Every morning, they ❸ the animals and give them water. The ❹ enjoy working together, and the nice weather makes the work pleasant.

7 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

loom - carpets - designs - souvenirs - spin

In Aswan, my lovely city, people do many jobs to make their living. They **1** wool and weave it to make beautiful **2** They use Arabic **3** with bright colors. it is an amazing work. Tourists buy these crafts as **4** My aunt has a small shop near the museum. I work in it and I want to do the same job when I grow up.

8 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. mom - my - bake - to - **I** - love - with - bread. ▶
2. her - neck - wears - on - **She** - a necklace - beautiful. ▶
3. from - souvenirs - the - buy - market - **We**. ▶
4. the - fish - catch - sea - in - **The** - fishermen. ▶
5. coral - **Colorful** - fish - home - to - are - reefs. ▶
6. don't - getting - up - like - early - **They**. ▶

9 Punctuate the following:

1. Yes he wants to go to school on time
▶
2. Let's have breakfast before we go
▶
3. does the beautiful landscape have tall mountains
▶
4. he collects old coins from different countries.
▶
5. the carpenter will make furniture for us
▶

Practice on Unit

1



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

A Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Magdy wakes up early to visit the
a) local market b) school c) park d) museum
- Workers at the market sell
a) books and pens b) clothes and shoes
c) lamps and necklaces d) fruits and vegetables
- Magdy enjoys taking photos of
a) modern buildings b) animals
c) his friends d) ancient sites
- In the afternoon, he watches
a) painters b) carpenters c) farmers d) chefs

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Students their homework after school.
a) do b) make c) watch d) give
- Farmers work hard to for food.
a) spin wool b) weave wool c) grow crops d) bake bread
- My grandmother uses a to weave wool and make carpets.
a) loom b) souvenir c) bracelet d) necklace

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

marine - mountains - Park - snorkel - shark

In Egypt's beautiful Sinai region, Ras Mohammed National ① protects a landscape of coral reefs and mangrove trees. Visitors can swim with colorful fish, ② near sea turtles, or dive to explore the rich ③ life. The park is a protected area where everyone must follow rules to keep the beach and nature safe. Local Bedouins share their knowledge about this amazing place, where ④ meet the sea in perfect harmony.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Every morning, I wake up early, get dressed, and have breakfast. After I pack my school bag, I go to school. During assembly, we stand in line, salute the flag, and sing the national anthem. In the classroom, we take out our books and begin lessons. My favorite subjects are English, science, and P.E. During the break, I play in the playground or chat with friends. After school, I go home, do homework, and rest before bedtime. Some topics are hard, but I enjoy learning new things every day!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In the morning, I pack my before leaving.
a) lunchbox b) school bag c) toys d) clothes
- My favorite subjects include
a) math b) English c) history d) art

B Answer the following questions:

- What does the student do right after waking up?
▶
- What activities happen during school assembly?
▶
- Give a suitable title to the text?
▶

C Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- so - market - yesterday - The - busy - was.
▶
- pack - have - school - and - I - my - breakfast - bag.
▶

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The three friends were always looking for ways to help. ()
2. The tap in the school bathroom was working perfectly. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did the friends notice in the school bathroom?



4. What did Noor say about the water?



7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The students (does) their homework every day.
2. My dad (not let) me play outside on school days.

8 Punctuate the sentences:

1. they happily harvest the crops every season ▶
2. It s hard work but I love being on the sea. ▶

9 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"My village"

▶ Guiding elements:

fishermen - community

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. The of mint tea is refreshing.
a) skeleton b) flavor c) waterfall d) desert
2. help plants grow naturally.
a) Natural fertilizers b) Dark clouds
c) Bench d) Waves
3. Wadi El-Hitan is famous for its fossils.
a) crocodile b) kingfisher c) whale d) hibiscus
4. We must weeds to protect crops.
a) plant b) catch c) water d) pull out
5. The Nile Perch is a type of
a) fish b) insect c) fossil d) palm tree
6. A/An helps visitors in museums.
a) teacher b) exhibit c) guide d) doctor
7. trees provide shade in hot weather.
a) Olive b) Palm c) Basil d) mint
8. The is a protected area for nature.
a) fossil museum b) sand dunes
c) green farm d) national park
9. clouds often bring rainy weather.
a) Dark b) Sleepy c) Hot d) Rare
10. The is the longest river in the world.
a) lake b) waterfall c) Nile d) desert
11. are harmful to plants if not removed.
a) Weeds b) Shades c) Soil d) Waves
12. The bird catches fish from the lake.
a) parsley b) hibiscus c) olive d) heron
13. Farmers use to grow healthy crops.
a) insects b) natural fertilizer
c) sand dunes d) exhibit
14. A is a place to see ancient bones.

Revision

- a) fossil museum b) green farm
 c) bench d) waterfall
 15. The flowers smell sweet in gardens.
 a) skeleton b) whale c) tilapia d) jasmine
 16. weather makes the soil wet.
 a) Hot b) Rainy c) Rare d) Old
 17. The Red Sea has colorful reefs.
 a) parsley b) olive c) coral d) basil

2

Choose the correct answer:

(Grammar)

1. Look! The boys football in the yard now.
 a) play b) plays c) are playing d) played
 2. I my homework at the moment.
 a) do b) am doing c) does d) doing
 3. What the children in the garden?
 a) are/doing b) am/doing c) is/doing d) does/do
 4. I my jacket today. It's hot.
 a) don't wearing b) not wear c) doesn't wear d) am not wearing
 5. My mother dinner in the kitchen right now.
 a) cooks b) cooked c) cook d) is cooking
 6. The students to their teacher carefully now.
 a) listen b) are listening c) listens d) listening
 7. It heavily outside at the moment.
 a) rain b) rains c) is raining d) rained
 8. My friends to the cinema now.
 a) are going b) goes c) go d) is going
 9. you your teeth now?
 a) Are/brushing b) Do/brush c) Does/brushes d) Is/brushing
 10. They TV right now.
 a) not watching b) don't watch c) doesn't watch d) aren't watching
 11. The baby now. He's playing.
 a) isn't sleeping b) doesn't sleep
 c) not sleeps d) don't sleep
 12. They for the exam at the moment.

- a) not studying b) don't study c) doesn't study d) aren't studying
13. you TV now?
a) Does/watches b) Do/watch c) Is/watching d) Are/watching
14. your brother football at the club?
a) Are/playing b) Does/play c) Is/playing d) Do/plays
15. it in Cairo now?
a) Does/rain b) Is/raining c) Do/rains d) Are/raining
16. Why she ?
a) does/cries b) is/crying c) do/cry d) are/crying
17. She lunch now. She's not hungry.
a) not eats b) doesn't eat c) isn't eating d) don't eating
18. The teacher on the board now.
a) writes b) is writing c) write d) wrote
19. your parents dinner now?
a) Are/cooking b) Do/cooks c) Does/cook d) Is/cooking
20. The dog at the moment. It's quiet.
a) aren't barking b) doesn't bark
c) isn't barking d) don't bark

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Look! The girls (watch) volleyball on the TV.
2. Mona (does) the dishes right now.
3. My sister (tidy) my room at the moment.
4. Listen! The boys (talk) to the teacher.
5. It (rain) heavily outside now.
6. I (wear) my jacket today. It's cold.
7. We (not study) for the exam now.
8. Dad (not eat) lunch at the moment.
9. Soha (read) a book now?
10. your father (work) at the moment?
11. The birds (sing) in the trees now.

Revision

12. They (not play) video games right now.
13. Where you (go) at the moment?
14. They (not watch) TV at the moment.
15. The baby (not sleep) right now.
16. What the children (do) in the garden?
17. it (snow) in Cairo now?
18. Why she (cry)?
19. My brother (not swim) in the pool now.
20. the teacher (explain) the lesson now?

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sky – mint tea – guide – weather – hot

Last weekend, my family took a trip to a national park. The ❶ was windy, and dark clouds covered the ❷ We saw a waterfall and a lake where a heron stood quietly. The ❸ showed us fossils in a small exhibit. I learned how important it is to care for the environment. We drank ❹ in the shade of palm trees. It was an unforgettable day!

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

olives – bench – fertilizers – weeds – night

My uncle works on green farms near the Nile. He uses natural ❶ to help plants grow. Sometimes, he must pull out ❷ or scare away birds. The soil is rich, perfect for ❸ and jasmine flowers. At sunset, we sit on a ❹ and watch the waves on the river. Farming is hard work, but it keeps us healthy.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fossils – desert – hibiscus – skeleton – bird

We went on a trip. It was at the fossil museum. we saw the ¹ of a whale! The guide explained how ² teach us about history. Sand dunes stretched into the ³. My little sister was scared of a crocodile exhibit, but I loved the ⁴ garden. Mom bought basil and parsley from the gift shop. It felt like a real adventure!

7 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. today - **The** - is - and rainy - weather - windy. ▶
2. soil - healthy - **Olive** - grow - trees - in. ▶
3. exhibit - see - **Did** - the - crocodile - you? ▶
4. museum - at - skeleton - of a whale - **We** - saw - the. ▶
5. to - be - **Can** - harmful - insects - plants? ▶
6. the - heron - lake - **A** - by - stood. ▶
7. give - shade - **Palm** - trees - cool. ▶
8. care - **Do** - you - for - environment - the? ▶

8 Punctuate the following:

1. pull out weeds to help plants grow
▶
2. mint tea has a fresh flavor
▶
3. the desert has huge sand dunes
▶
4. dark clouds don t mean sunny weather.
▶
5. Yes ginger is a healthy spice
▶
6. are fossils found in national parks
▶
7. the waterfall makes the rocks wet
▶

Practice on Unit

2



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

A Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Grandpa grows herbs like
a) roses b) mint c) tulips d) cactus
- Grandpa waters the plants
a) at night b) in the afternoon
c) once a week d) every morning
- Grandpa sometimes uses
a) chemical fertilizer b) weeds
c) natural fertilizer d) insect spray
- Laila likes the smell and asks about
a) olives b) figs c) jasmine d) hibiscus

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- People in the desert often travel by
a) cars b) boats c) planes d) camels
- The Nile perch is a type of
a) bird b) fish c) temple d) soil
- Wadi I-Hitan is also called the of the Whales.
a) Valley b) Desert c) Lake d) Museum

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shade - wet - clear - different - dark

The weather in Egypt changes from one place to another. It is very
 ① in many cities. In Alexandria, it is windy and rainy with
 ② clouds. People stay indoors because the streets are
 ③ In Aswan, the sun is strong, so people sit in the ④
 to stay cool.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Nile River is the longest river in the world. **It** flows through many countries, including Egypt, where it moves from south to north. The river is very important because it brings water to dry areas and helps farmers grow crops. Many animals live near the Nile, such as crocodiles, fish like tilapia, and different birds. The river also helps people travel by boat. In the past, floods brought rich soil that made farming easier and food plentiful.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Near the Nile, you can find animals such as
 a) lions and elephants b) crocodiles and tilapia
 c) bears and wolves d) cats and dogs
- The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to the
 a) Egypt b) Nile River c) Water d) Soil

B Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?
 ▶
- How does the Nile River help farmers grow crops in Egypt?
 ▶
- How do people travel on the Nile River?
 ▶

C Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- camera - a picture - wanted - **I** - take - to - with - my.
 ▶
- the lake - animals - **What** - near - the students - did - see.
 ▶

6. The Story

A

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Farida did not want to do anything about the water waste. ()
2. Ahmed took photos of the water problems to use in their presentations. ()

B

Answer the following questions:

1. What did the three friends do to help save water?



2. How did the school cleaner help the students?



7

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. She (read) a book at the moment.
2. They (not / watch) TV right now.

8

Punctuate the sentences:

1. malik is watching a football match now
2. what do you know about the nile River?



9

Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"A trip to Wadi El Rayan"

▶ Guiding elements:

- ▶ What can you see and do at Wadi El Rayan?
- ▶ Why is Wadi El Rayan an important natural place?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. A person who designs buildings is called a/an
 a) architect b) mechanic c) tailor d) delivery person
2. The sharp parts on a rose stem are called
 a) petals b) thorns c) branches d) beaks
3. A scientist who studies very small things works in
 a) nanoscience b) chemistry c) biology d) geography
4. During an emergency, we call a
 a) traffic officer b) garbage expert
 c) water resources engineer d) paramedic
5. The colorful parts of a flower are called
 a) stems b) thorns c) petals d) roots
6. A person who fixes cars is called a/an
 a) scientist b) mechanic c) architect d) tailor
7. In dry seasons, which plant survives best?
 a) rose b) hibiscus c) palm tree d) cactus
8. We put garbage in the
 a) bin b) vehicle c) branch d) beak
9. A person who delivers packages is a
 a) traffic officer b) scientist c) paramedic d) delivery person
10. controls traffic on the roads.
 a) Nanoparticles b) Petals c) Signs d) Thorns
11. When you solve difficult problems, you feel
 a) afraid b) proud c) scary d) noisy
12. A is a story about someone's life.
 a) biography b) research c) poster d) community
13. People who help in emergencies must work
 a) slowly b) roughly c) quickly d) noisily
14. Scientists often work at
 a) universities b) shops c) malls d) stores

Revision

15. Birds use a to pick up food.
 a) thorn b) petal c) stem d) beak
16. A is a person who makes clothes.
 a) mechanic b) tailor c) architect d) scientist
17. When you're scared, you feel
 a) proud b) afraid c) refreshed d) bright
18. The is the main part of a plant.
 a) stem b) petal c) thorn d) beak
19. We use to share important messages at school.
 a) nanoparticles b) posters c) thorns d) beaks

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. My little brother swim yet.
 a) can b) can't c) is able d) able to
2. Birds fly high in the sky.
 a) can't b) can c) are able d) isn't able
3. Cats see in the dark.
 a) aren't b) isn't c) are able to d) isn't able
4. Ahmed speak three languages fluently.
 a) not able b) is able c) able d) can
5. The baby walk now. She's only 6 months old.
 a) can b) are able c) is able to d) can't
6. With practice, you improve your English.
 a) can't b) able c) can d) not able
7. After lessons, we are to play in the schoolyard.
 a) able b) can't c) can d) not able
8. Fish live without water.
 a) can't b) can c) are able to d) isn't able
9. My grandmother use a smartphone. She learned last year!
 a) can't b) able c) can d) not able
10. Plants survive without sunlight.
 a) can b) can't c) are able d) is able

11. We visit the pyramids next weekend.
a) can b) couldn't c) able to d) not able
12. The students to answer all the questions correctly.
a) can b) can't c) are able d) isn't able
13. The doctor says I eat too much sugar because it's bad for my health.
a) able to b) can't c) am able d) can
14. With this ticket, you are to enter the museum.
a) can't b) can c) able d) not able
15. I finish my homework because it's too difficult.
a) can b) is able to c) can't d) able
16. They are to come to the party tomorrow.
a) was able b) can't able c) able d) isn't able
17. You borrow my pencil if you need one.
a) couldn't b) can c) able to d) not able
18. The car to start because the battery is dead.
a) can b) can't c) isn't able d) are able
19. A fish isn't climb a tree.
a) can b) can't c) are able d) able to
20. With glasses, my grandfather to read well.
a) can b) can't c) is able d) not able

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My baby sister (can/walk) yet; she's too little.
2. (can/you) ride a bicycle?
3. Fish (not breathe) outside of water.
4. With practice, Ahmed (able to/solve) difficult math problems.
5. The new student cannot (spoke) Arabic yet.

Revision

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

principal – cancer – awards – nanoscience – headache

Lina, a smart student, loves chemistry and ❶ Her research on nanoparticles won ❷ at the university. She studies how small creatures adapt to dry seasons. Her ❸ says, "Lina finds solutions to big problems." She wants to be a scientist to help cure ❹ one day.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

posters – control – scary – officers – crowed

Officer Sam stops noisy cars near our school. "Follow signs to stay safe," he says. One day, a ❶ accident happened, but Sam kept ❷ My classmates made ❸ to thank him. Now we understand how traffic ❹ protect the community. Their jobs make our streets safer for everyone.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

actions – difference – planet – bins – recycle

Mr. Ali, a Garbage Bag Expert, teaches us to use ❶ properly. "Put garbage in bags to help the environment," he says. Even small ❷ , like recycling, can make a big ❸ We feel refreshed knowing we're helping our planet. all people should try to help the ❹

7 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. architect - school - our - **The** - designs - new.



2. weather - plants - **Cactus** - dry - in - survive.



3. peck - beaks - their - food - with - **Birds**.



4. petals, - thorns - **Roses** - beautiful - have - but - also have.



5. **A** - nanoparticles - studies - chemistry - in - scientist.



6. situations - in - **Paramedics** - help - emergency.



7. don't - getting - up - like - early - **They**.



8 Punctuate the following:

1. can nanoscience cure cancer



2. my classmates aren t noisy during tests.



3. why do you study nanoscience



4. the principal awarded students for their achievements



5. Isn t that animal too scary



Practice on Unit

3



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

A Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A tailor makes
 a) food b) clothes c) research d) cars
2. A fixes cars and other vehicles
 a) street cleaner b) tailor c) traffic officer d) mechanic
3. A helps people cross the road safely.
 a) mechanic b) tailor c) traffic officer d) street cleaner
4. The job of a street cleaner is important because they
 a) make clothes b) fix cars
 c) keep the city beautiful d) control traffic

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should others.
 a) respect b) say c) plan d) clean
2. My father is a He helps sick people get better.
 a) tailor b) doctor c) mechanic d) traffic officer
3. The opposite of "useful" is
 a) safe b) harmful c) strong d) old

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cleaners - research - emergency - important - safe

In our community, many brilliant people work hard every day. Paramedics are always ready for an ① helping people in need. Street ② keep areas tidy. All these jobs are ③ to keep our city clean and ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

People have many different jobs. A paramedic helps people in emergencies. An architect designs buildings, while a water resources engineer works to protect water. A mechanic fixes cars. A tailor makes or mends clothes. A delivery person brings packages to homes. A street cleaner keeps the roads clean. A traffic officer controls traffic and keeps drivers safe. Every job is important and helps the community in different ways.

A Choose the correct answer:

- A brings packages to homes.
 - mechanic
 - delivery person
 - tailor
 - paramedic
- Every job is important and helps the
 - community
 - animals
 - shops
 - fruits

B Answer the following questions:

- What does a paramedic do?
▶
- Why is the job of a street cleaner important?
▶
- How is an architect's job different from a mechanic's?
▶

C Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a correct sentence:

- important - jobs - community - in - All - are - our. ▶
- streets - not - rubbish - People - should - throw - in - the. ▶

6. The Story

A

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The friends didn't continue the project when they heard their unkind classmate. ()
2. Ahmed made posters with colored markers. ()

B

Answer the following questions:

1. What did a classmate say to them one afternoon?



2. What did Noor's friends do when she stood up to the classmate?



7

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. He is (can) to walk to school.
2. They (able) ride a bike.

8

Punctuate the sentences:

1. the scientist made important discoveries
2. can I donate food to the poor people



9

Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Road rules"

▶ Guiding elements: respect the road - drive slowly - cross carefully

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. Ancient Egyptians wrote on
 a) plastic b) papyrus c) glass d) granite
2. A/An is a very long period without rain.
 a) flood b) irrigation c) climate d) drought
3. Pyramids were built using
 a) linen b) bricks c) gold d) amulets
4. comes from flax plants.
 a) Clay b) Plastic c) Iron d) Linen
5. Factories use in large amounts.
 a) amulets b) electricity c) floods d) development
6. is used to make windows.
 a) Gold b) Iron c) Granite d) Glass
7. Farmers use to water their crops.
 a) irrigation b) fuel c) energy d) climate
8. Ancient Egyptian kings were preserved as
 a) heroes b) mummies c) minerals d) crops
9. The weather over time is called
 a) climate b) flood c) drought d) development
10. is shiny and valuable material.
 a) Clay b) Gold c) Linen d) Bricks
11. Too much rain can cause
 a) drought b) flood c) irrigation d) development
12. We burn to get energy.
 a) glass b) papyrus c) granite d) fuel
13. is used to make pottery.
 a) Clay b) Iron c) Gold d) Linen
14. means very old things from history.
 a) Natural b) Endless c) Fascinating d) Ancient
15. can harm the environment.
 a) Crops b) Factories c) Heroes d) Gifts

Revision

16. We get from oil.
 a) plastic b) linen c) bricks d) granite
17. are people who are brave.
 a) Mummies b) Heroes c) Minerals d) Crops

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. Birds fly high in the sky.
 a) can b) can't c) must d) should
2. With practice, you improve your English skills.
 a) can't b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) can
3. Fish live without water.
 a) can b) can't c) must d) should
4. After school, we are play football in the yard.
 a) can b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) able to
5. With this ticket, you enter the museum for free.
 a) can't b) mustn't c) can d) shouldn't
6. You stop when the traffic light is red.
 a) must b) mustn't c) can d) shouldn't
7. Students bring their books to class every day.
 a) mustn't b) can't c) must d) shouldn't
8. You touch fire; it's dangerous!
 a) must b) mustn't c) can d) should
9. We be quiet in the library.
 a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) can't d) must
10. Children listen to their parents.
 a) must b) mustn't c) aren't d) shouldn't
11. You brush your teeth twice a day.
 a) shouldn't b) should c) mustn't d) can't
12. You wear a jacket in winter.
 a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) can't
13. Students study before exams.
 a) shouldn't b) can't c) should d) mustn't
14. You eat too much fast food.
 a) should b) can c) must d) shouldn't

15. We help our classmates when they need it.
a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) can't
16. You throw garbage on the street.
a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) can
17. You take medicine without asking a doctor first.
a) should b) must c) mustn't d) are able to
18. With glasses, my grandfather is able read small letters now.
a) two b) too c) to d) can
19. We recycle plastic bottles to help the environment.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) must d) aren't able to
20. The baby walk yet, but she'll learn soon.
a) must b) isn't able to c) shouldn't d) should
21. You use your phone while crossing the street!
a) mustn't b) should c) must d) are able to
22. Students arrive late for exams. It's against the rules.
a) must b) mustn't c) should d) are able to
23. You eat vegetables every day for good health.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) should d) can't
24. Without a ticket, you enter the cinema.
a) must b) should c) mustn't d) aren't able to

3

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My little brother (can/read) yet - he's only 3 years old.
2. You must (stopped) when the traffic light is red.
3. Students should not (talks) during exams.
4. She (can/swim) very well.
5. The doctor says I mustn't (eaten) too much candy.
6. Can your father (driving) a big truck?
7. We (bring / should) our passports for the flight tomorrow.
8. Cats (able to/jump) in the air.
9. You mustn't (fed) the animals at the zoo.
10. (your friend / can) speak Arabic and English fluently?

Revision

4

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sculptures - granite - papyrus - sphinx - linen

The ancient Egyptians created fantastic objects. They made ① from plants, which was their paper. Mummies were carefully wrapped in ② cloth. Today, we can see these valuable artifacts in museums. The ancient Egyptians also made beautiful ③ from ④ Their development in art and building was amazing!

5

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

resources - Electricity - wind - Factories - solar power

Today, we get energy from different sources. ① use oil and gas as fuel. But these ② can pollute the air. Now, many people use ③ from solar panels. This natural energy doesn't harm the environment. ④ can also come from water and wind. Finding clean energy makes a big difference for our planet. We must protect our climate.

6

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

floods - steel - drought - irrigation - gold

Farmers grow important crops like wheat and rice. They use ① to water fields during ② But sometimes, too much rain causes ③ that can harm plants. Farmers make pots from clay to store food. They also use tools made of iron and ④ Changes in climate make farming difficult. New methods help farmers grow more food.

7

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

better- resources - plastic - difference - pollute

Our planet has endless beauty but faces problems. Factories sometimes ① air and water. Climate change causes droughts and floods. We can help by using less ② and fuel. Solar power is a clean energy source. Recycling saves natural ③ like paper and glass. Everyone can be a hero by protecting Earth. Small actions make a big ④ for our future.

8 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. comes - from - **Linen** - plants - flax.
▶
2. from - **Bricks** - made - clay - are.
▶
3. huge - electricity - **Can** - from - dams- come?
▶
4. harm - crops - factories - **Floods** - can - and.
▶
5. magical - amulets - **Mummies** - protection - wore - for.
▶
6. energy - provide - and - **Oil** - gas - natural.
▶
7. drought - greatly - **Irrigation** - helps - during - seasons.
▶
8. **Does** - crops - really - climate - change - affect?
▶
9. development - inspire - **Heroes** - society - in - positive.
▶
10. glass - much - stronger - **Isn't** - granite - than?
▶

9 Punctuate the following:

1. why do we use colored cloth for ceremonies
▶
2. gold and iron are valuable minerals
▶
3. ancient egyptians used papyrus for writing.
▶
4. plastic differs from natural materials
▶



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

(A) Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians made clothes from ?
a) cotton b) linen c) wool d) silk
2. They decorated statues with
a) paper b) wood c) colorful stones d) glass
3. Pots and bricks were made from
a) clay b) iron c) gold d) sand
4. The materials Ancient Egyptians used were
a) weak b) strong c) modern d) plastic

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A is a building where people can see ancient objects.
a) school b) museum c) station d) factory
2. is made from sand and used in windows.
a) Glass b) Brick c) Paper d) Linen
3. is a black liquid found under the ground.
a) Gas b) Oil c) Iron d) Gold

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

turning off - waste - wisely - devices - lights

We can save electricity by ① the lights when we leave a room. We should use electricity ② so we don't ③ energy. It's also important to switch off electrical ④ when they are not in use.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt has many natural and man-made resources. Natural resources include oil, natural gas, minerals, and gold. Man-made resources include paper, glass, and bricks. Oil is found in the Western Desert and Sinai. The High Dam in Aswan stores water, produces electricity, and protects the land from floods. These resources help Egypt **develop** and give people a better life.

A Choose the correct answer:

- The main idea of the text is
 a) Ancient Egyptian food b) Egypt's resources
 c) How to build a dam d) Farming in Egypt
- The underlined word "**develop**" means
 a) grow b) break c) fall d) sell

B Answer the following questions:

- Name two natural resources in Egypt?
 ►

- Where is oil found in Egypt?
 ►

- What does the High Dam protect the land from?
 ►

C Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a correct sentence:

- used - gold - jewelry - make - to - They. ►

- Bricks - made - clay - are - from - and - water. ►

6. The Story

A

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Ahmed made posters with colored markers. ()
2. Mr. Youssef said a small drip could waste liters of water each day. ()

B

Answer the following questions:

1. What did the children believe in?
▶
2. What reason did Noor give for caring about water?
▶

7

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We (must) waste water and other natural resources.
2. The farmer (grow) crops all year with irrigation.

8

Punctuate the sentences:

1. egypt has many natural resources
▶
2. what does your father do
▶

9

Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Natural Resources in Egypt"

▶ Guiding elements:

Oil - Iron - Gold

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The is the largest solar power project in Egypt.
 a) water park b) Benban Solar Park
 c) Grand Egyptian Museum d) cable car
2. Visitors must show their at the museum entrance.
 a) ticket b) passport c) luggage d) medicine
3. The High Dam is one the most important projects in Egypt.
 a) solar b) dangerous c) man-made d) typical
4. The Grand Egyptian Museum is located on a near the pyramids.
 a) city b) temple c) plateau d) community
5. Solar panels provide us with
 a) electricity b) oil c) water d) food
6. The Pharaohs' can be seen in the museum.
 a) eco news b) Tutankhamun's mask
 c) solar energy d) travel plan
7. We should pack our before traveling.
 a) plateau b) luggage c) community d) wisdom
8. The provides clean energy for many homes.
 a) water park b) cable car c) exhibition d) solar station
9. The museum offers tours for visitors.
 a) fighting b) guided c) unusual d) modern
10. Egypt's ancient built amazing pyramids.
 a) Pharaohs b) boards c) areas d) bundles
11. The desk helps visitors with questions.
 a) passport b) luggage c) information d) entrance
12. Solar energy is a power source.
 a) sustainable b) luxury c) peaceful d) local
13. The shows beautiful views of the Red Sea.
 a) exhibition b) cable car c) bundle of sticks d) brochure
14. We should our tickets online to save time.
 a) argue b) book c) run d) pack

Revision

15. The of ancient Egyptians can be seen in their art.
a) fighting b) luggage c) wisdom d) business
16. The is a fun place for families.
a) water park b) solar station c) plateau d) exhibition
17. The museum has artifacts from long ago.
a) modern b) valuable c) nearby d) smart
18. A of sticks was used to build boats.
a) board b) port c) plan d) bundle
19. The in Luxor are thousands of years old.
a) temples b) suitcases c) parks d) entrances
20. We should make a/an before traveling.
a) argument b) travel plan c) business d) community

2

Choose the correct answer:

(Grammar)

1. Yesterday, Ahmed his homework carefully.
a) finish b) finished c) finishes d) finishing
2. The Pharaohs the Great Pyramids thousands of years ago.
a) built b) build c) building d) builds
3. We to Luxor last summer.
a) go b) went c) going d) goes
4. I at the museum yesterday.
a) didn't b) don't c) doesn't d) wasn't
5. They eat breakfast last morning.
a) isn't b) don't c) aren't d) didn't
6. She her luggage for the trip yesterday.
a) didn't pack b) doesn't pack c) not packed d) packing
7. you watch the solar energy documentary last Sunday ?
a) Do b) Did c) Are d) Is
8. Did they Benban Solar Park last month?
a) visited b) visits c) visit d) visiting
9. What your brother see at the museum last weekend?
a) do b) did c) does d) is
10. Where did you last winter?
a) travels b) traveling c) traveled d) travel

11. What time the tour start yesterday?
 a) do b) did c) does d) is
12. Why Sara bring her passport?
 a) didn't b) don't c) doesn't d) isn't
13. We sailed on the Nile
 a) tomorrow b) now c) last week d) next month
14., they explored ancient temples.
 a) Now b) Today c) Yesterday d) Tomorrow
15. The students finished their project
 a) last Monday b) next Monday
 c) every Monday d) on Mondays
16. The guide didn't about the Solar Boat.
 a) explain b) explaining c) explains d) explained
17. When your parents arrive in Cairo?
 a) does b) will c) are d) did
18. My friend me a souvenir from Aswan.
 a) bought b) buy c) buying d) buys
19. you pack your suitcase carefully yesterday?
 a) Do b) Did c) Are d) Will
20. They at the water park last weekend.
 a) aren't b) wasn't c) didn't d) weren't

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- Ahmed (play) football with his friends yesterday.
- The tourists (not visit) the pyramids last Monday.
- We (eat) delicious falafel for lunch an hour ago.
- (be) you at the science fair yesterday?
- My parents (buy) a beautiful carpet from Khan El-Khalili last week.
- (do) your sister finish her homework last night?
- The students (not understand) the lesson about Pharaohs yesterday.
- Where (go) your family last summer holiday?

Revision

9. I (see) Tutankhamun's golden mask at the museum.
 10. Why (not / come) you to school yesterday?

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

information - Pharaohs - exhibition - The Nile - mask

The Grand Egyptian Museum is a modern wonder located near the pyramids. Visitors can see Tutankhamun's ❶ and other valuable artifacts. The ❷ halls are full of amazing technology. At the ❸ desk, you can book a ticket for a guided tour. The museum is on a plateau with sea views. It shows the wisdom of the ❹ This national treasure is perfect for local and international tourists.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pollution - cities - solar - sun - sustainable

Benban Solar Park is one of the largest solar stations in the world. This ❶ project uses solar energy to power homes. The area is peaceful and unusual, with rows of ❷ panels. It helps Egypt run business without ❸ This smart technology is a model for other ❹ It shows the strength of renewable energy.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

luggage - amazing - pyramids - local - Solar Boat

Luxor is nearby the Nile and famous for its temples. You can take a cable car to see the city from above. The ❶ markets sell brochures about Pharaohs. Don't argue with sellers; be safe and kind. Pack your suitcases with ❷ for the trip. The travel plan includes visiting the ❸ and sphinx. This ideal destination mixes history and luxury. It's an ❹ experience!

7 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

boat - ideal - ticket - sustainable - shows

The water park is a fun place for families. Kids love the ① and slides. Parents can relax in the peaceful area. The park uses ② practices to save water. You can book a ③ online or at the entrance. Don't forget to pack sun medicine and towels. The community here is friendly and smart. It's an ④ spot for unity and fun.

8 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

history - wisdom - desert - bundles of sticks - tours

The Solar Boat is unusual in Giza. This ancient technology shows the ① of Egypt's past. Visitors learn how Pharaohs used ② to build boats. The board displays news about solar energy. The project is located near the pyramids. It's a valuable part of Egypt's ③ The guided ④ are amazing and educational.

9 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. Park - Solar - **Benban** - solar - uses - energy.



2. I - my - passport - **Must** - bring?



3. fighting - and - **You** - together - stop - work - should



4. views - cable - offers - **The** - sea - car.



5. is - extremely - **Tutankhamun's** - mask - valuable.



Revision

6. This - park - water - today - feels - peaceful.



7. helps - business - technology - Modern - run.



8. Is - exhibition - nearby - the?



9. the - entrance - Don't - at - argue!



10. I - tour - a - guided - book - Can?



10

Punctuate the following:

1. Isn't that bundle of sticks unusual



2. pack your suitcases carefully



3. ancient temples show Pharaohs' wisdom



4. the Grand Egyptian Museum looks amazing!



5. where's the information desk?



Practice on Unit

5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



A Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Grand Egyptian Museum will show ?
 a) modern paintings b) treasures from ancient Egypt
 c) sports events d) new cars
- The High Dam protects farms from
 a) floods b) animals c) insects d) fire
- New Cairo has
 a) old houses b) small farms
 c) deserts d) clean streets
- Tourists visit Egypt to
 a) work in offices b) see projects
 c) build houses d) plant trees

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The word "treasure" means
 a) valuable things b) green farms
 c) old buildings d) modern cars
- A place where people keep ancient objects is called a
 a) school b) museum c) park d) station
- The High Dam gives people
 a) electricity b) water c) oil d) gas

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

energy - environment - move - gardens - river

The New Capital is one of Egypt's most important modern projects. It has many government buildings, large parks, and a beautiful ① Many people will ② there in the future. The city uses clean ③ to protect the ④ It is connected to other cities by fast railway.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is famous for its **modern** and historical projects. The Grand Egyptian Museum is one of the largest museums in the world. It has thousands of ancient treasures. The High Dam in Aswan gives electricity to millions of people and helps farmers grow their crops. The smart city is a modern city with clean energy and smart services. These projects help improve life for Egyptians and attract visitors from all over the world.

A

Choose the correct answer:

1. The main idea of the text is
 a) Egyptian sports b) Egypt's important projects
 c) farming in Egypt d) ancient temples
2. The word underlined word "**modern**" means
 a) very old b) new c) dangerous d) natural

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What does the Grand Egyptian Museum have?
 ►
4. How does the High Dam help farmers?
 ►
5. Why are Egypt's projects important for visitors?
 ►

C Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a correct sentence:

1. new - capital - **The** - city - modern - is - very. ▶
2. visit - its - to - tourists - projects - Egypt - **Many** - important - see. ▶

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The friends' message began to spread in the school. ()
2. The head teacher gave the friends money. ()

B Answer the following questions:

1. What fun activity did some classes start? ▶
2. Who gave the children certificates? ▶

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The High Dam (provide) electricity to millions of people.
2. Many tourists (come) to Egypt last year.

8 Punctuate the sentences:

1. the High Dam is located in Aswan ▶
2. when will the museum open today ▶

9 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"An important place in Egypt"

▶ Guiding elements:

Where is it? - Why is it important?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 2

Weekly Evaluations

Week1: Based on Unit1

Choose the correct answer:

1. In Khan El Khalili, you can like lamps, clothes, and bracelets.
a) make furniture b) buy souvenirs
c) bake bread d) snorkel
2. Carpenters in the market often from wood.
a) visit ancient sites b) spend time
c) take photos d) make furniture
3. In a national park, you should follow the to protect the area.
a) beaches b) landscapes c) mountains d) rules
4. The Sinai region has beautiful, natural of mountains and beaches.
a) souvenirs b) necklaces c) landscapes d) carpenters
5. Some tourists time swimming and snorkeling during their holiday.
a) make b) play c) bake d) spend
6. A lizard often under rocks to stay safe.
a) hide b) hiding c) hides d) hidden
7. Bedouins tourists about their culture and traditions.
a) teach b) teaches c) teaching d) is teaching
8. Coral reefs grow in rivers.
a) aren't b) doesn't c) not d) don't
9. Snakes out at night to hunt.
a) came b) comes c) come d) coming
10. A fox insects and small rats for food.
a) eat b) eats c) eating d) eaten

Week2: Based on Unit1

Choose the correct answer:

1. Farmers crops when they grow.
a) spin b) repair c) weave d) harvest
2. Villagers use a to make carpets.
a) net b) loom c) rope d) breeze
3. A cool wind is called a
a) rope b) string c) breeze d) rug
4. A is usually smaller than a carpet.
a) net b) rug c) rope d) loom
5. Before starting the school day, students usually the national flag.
a) weave b) feed c) salute d) repair
6. Adam doesn't garbage in the street.
a) throw b) throws c) throwing d) threw
7. A turtle a hard shell to protect itself.
a) have b) has c) had d) having
8. A camel water in its body to survive in hot weather.
a) store b) stores c) stored d) storing
9. National parks many kinds of marine life and mangrove trees.
a) protect b) protects c) protecting d) is protecting
10. Good students don't noise in the class.
a) made b) makes c) making d) make

Week3: Based on Unit2

Choose the correct answer:

1. Salma's garden is full of which are harmful to her garden.
a) herbs b) weeds c) basil d) sunlight
2. Youssef uses instead of chemicals to grow his vegetables.
a) harmful insects b) dark clouds
c) waves d) natural fertilizer
3. Rania loves the smell of fresh in her kitchen, so she grows it in small pots.
a) mint b) shade c) weeds d) sage

Revision

4. Hani wore a hat to himself from the hot sun.
a) taste b) pull out c) protect d) grow
5. She sits in the, to protect herself from direct sunlight.
a) weather b) outdoors c) breeze d) shade
6. Right now, tourists the sunset.
a) watches b) are watching c) watch d) watched
7. Kareem and I to pull out weeds from the flower bed.
a) am trying b) is trying c) are trying d) trying
8. I to find my hat; have you seen it?
a) trying b) is try c) are try d) am trying
9. My parents TV; they're talking about the weather.
a) doesn't watching b) isn't watching
c) don't watch d) aren't watching
10. It's 7 a.m., and my uncle breakfast for the whole family.
a) are making b) is making c) making d) makes

Week 4: Based on Unit 2

Choose the correct answer:

1. The farmers depend on rich for better crops.
a) soil b) river c) boat d) temple
2. The fishermen caught some to sell in the market.
a) birds b) temples c) deserts d) tilapias
3. attacks are rare, but they can be dangerous.
a) Wheat b) Crocodile c) Park d) Desert
4. walls are often covered with ancient drawings.
a) Temple b) House c) School d) Shop
5. Farmers food for the markets in many cities.
a) provide b) hide c) take d) destroy
6. The villagers the soil with natural fertilizer this week.
a) is preparing b) are preparing
c) prepares d) preparing
7. We for the best place to sit together and watch the birds.
a) are looking b) is looking
c) looking d) looks
8. We not studying for our English test right now.
a) do b) does c) are d) be

9. they building a new bridge in the city?
 a) Is b) Are c) Am d) Be
10. Listen! The dog at someone.
 a) bark b) are barking c) barks d) is barking

Week5: Based on Unit3

Choose the correct answer:

1. A/An helps people in emergencies and saves lives.
 a) architect b) paramedic c) mechanic d) tailor
2. The designs buildings and plans new houses.
 a) mechanic b) traffic officer
 c) delivery person d) architect
3. The workers put up that say "Drive Slowly!" near the school.
 a) signs b) vehicles c) garbage d) bins
4. The traffic officer helps people the road safely.
 a) jump b) run c) cross d) swim
5. People should about ways to keep the environment clean.
 a) cross b) make c) use d) learn
6. You can the answer on that website.
 a) finds b) found c) find d) finding
7. Camels stay for a long time without water.
 a) can't b) must c) mustn't d) can
8. She is speak English well.
 a) able to b) can c) can't d) hasn't
9. I hang posters around the park?
 a) Have b) Able to c) Can d) Does
10. You use posters to warn people about traffic problems.
 a) can't b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) can

Week6: Based on Unit3

Choose the correct answer:

1. The beautiful red smelled very good.
 a) thorn b) cactus c) beak d) petals
2. The bird used its sharp to peck at the fruit.
 a) stem b) beak c) branch d) thorns

Revision

3. The plant is covered in sharp thorns.
a) cactus b) scientist c) creature d) apple
4. She felt because she fell down in front of every one.
a) proud b) embarrassed c) refreshed d) mean
5. The bird gently the seeds on the ground.
a) flew away b) flew down c) pecked at d) built
6. You can the information from this book.
a) take b) took c) takes d) taking
7. He is play the guitar very well.
a) able b) can c) can't d) able to
8. I leave the classroom early today?
a) Have b) Able to c) Can d) Has
9. I use my phone today as I need it.
a) can b) able c) am able d) is able
10. He can't to school because his legs hurt.
a) walking b) walks c) walk d) walked

Week7: Based on Unit4

Choose the correct answer:

1. Solar panels help us use to produce electricity.
a) gold b) solar power c) mummy d) flax
2. The High Dam controls the of the Nile River.
a) flood b) plastic c) climate change d) sculptures
3. Factories sometimes the environment with harmful gases.
a) harvest b) plant c) pollute d) irrigate
4. Ancient Egyptians used to write on long ago.
a) linen b) iron c) clay d) papyrus
5. The farmers use systems to water their fields.
a) irrigation b) pollution c) electricity d) amulet
6. You finish your homework before you play.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) able d) must
7. Students talk loudly in the library.
a) must b) mustn't c) should d) can
8. We wear a uniform at our school.
a) must b) shouldn't c) are able d) able to

9. You eat too much junk food. It's bad for your health.
 a) must b) should c) shouldn't d) can
10. Drivers stop at red traffic lights.
 a) must b) can c) should d) mustn't

Week8: Based on Unit4

Choose the correct answer:

1. The mummy was carefully to protect it from damage.
 a) polluted b) wrapped c) harvested d) irrigated
2. Solar power is a type of energy that does not harm the environment.
 a) fossil b) plastic c) sustainable d) dirty
3. Plastic bags often cause harm to the and animals.
 a) environment b) energy c) devices d) electricity
4. Farmers grow different types of like wheat and corn on their land.
 a) minerals b) crops c) amulets d) fossils
5. The High Dam helps generate for many homes and factories.
 a) fossil b) sand c) electricity d) clay
6. You forget to bring your ID card tomorrow.
 a) shouldn't b) must c) should d) can
7. People throw garbage in the river.
 a) should b) must c) can d) mustn't
8. She practice the piano every day to improve.
 a) mustn't b) able to c) can't d) should
9. We leave the window open when it's raining.
 a) should b) must c) mustn't d) can
10. You be late for school; it's important to be on time.
 a) shouldn't b) should c) must d) can

Week9: Based on Unit5

Choose the correct answer:

1. The museum's has many ancient artifacts.
 a) passport b) luggage c) exhibition d) solar energy
2. Before the trip, I need to my suitcase carefully.
 a) pack b) argue c) board d) located

Revision

3. The helps visitors learn information about the museum.
a) teacher b) guided tour c) luggage d) solar stations
4. You must show your to get on the plane.
a) peace b) bundle of sticks
c) wisdom d) passport
5. Our includes developments to the Grand Egyptian Museum.
a) travel plan b) national plan c) entrance d) trip
6. We the stars through the telescope last night.
a) saw b) see c) seeing d) sees
7. We about fossil fuel in our science class yesterday.
a) learn b) learns c) learned d) learning
8. My brother a book about space exploration last week.
a) read b) reads c) reading d) readed
9. We to the market last Friday.
a) go b) went c) goes d) going
10. My father bread from the bakery yesterday.
a) buy b) buys c) buying d) bought

Week10: Based on Unit5

Choose the correct answer:

1. Tourists often visit the Museum to see ancient treasures.
a) hotel room b) cable car c) Grand Egyptian d) sea views
2. You can get maps and guides from the at the airport.
a) exhibition b) solar park c) plateau d) information desk
3. The museum will hold a special about ancient Egypt.
a) suitcase b) cable car c) club d) exhibition
4. The explained the history of the pharaohs.
a) ticket b) guided tour c) fuel d) vision
5. A travel helps you organize your journey.
a) statue b) plan c) company d) office
6. Scientists a new satellite to study the atmosphere 5 years ago.
a) sent b) send c) sending d) sends
7. She finish her homework before dinner yesterday.
a) a) doesn't b) didn't c) don't d) hasn't
8. he buy his car last year?
a) Does b) Do c) Did d) Was

9. We many photos during our holiday in Luxor Last January.
 a) taking b) take c) takes d) took
10. I like the film we watched.
 a) didn't b) don't c) hasn't d) not

Week11: General

1 Choose the correct answer: (Story)

1. The dripping tap wasted too much
 a) electricity b) paper c) food d) water
2. Ahmed used to take photos.
 a) phone b) tablet c) camera d) laptop

2 Answer the questions: (Story)

1. What problem did Noor, Ahmed, and Farida notice at their school?
 ►
2. How did the teacher respond when the students told her about their plan?
 ►

3 Choose the correct answer: (General)

1. The at the museum showed us how the ancient Egyptians lived.
 a) mechanic b) rope c) bracelet d) guide
2. When it rains, the ground becomes and slippery.
 a) dry b) wet c) sandy d) rough
3. The village is famous for its handmade like carpets.
 a) crafts b) fossils c) teams d) ropes
4. We need to the boats before going fishing; it's broken.
 a) break b) bake c) repair d) dye
5. The scientist studied the effects of change on marine life.
 a) climate b) fashion c) history d) cooking

Week12: General

1 True or False: (Story)

1. The tap in the bathroom was fixed before the students noticed it. ()
2. Noor wrote down everything she noticed about water use in the school. ()

2 Answer the questions:

(Story)

1. Why did some students not understand Noor, Ahmed, and Farida's actions?
2. How did Ahmed contribute to the project?

3 Choose the correct answer:

(General)

1. She to school yesterday.
a) go b) goes c) gone d) went
2. They always their homework on time; they are excellent.
a) does b) doing c) do d) done
3. Look! He football in the park right now.
a) is playing b) plays c) play d) played
4. Are you carry this heavy box?
a) should b) able to c) can d) must
5. We park our cars here. It's not allowed.
a) must b) should c) mustn't d) can

Week13: General

1 Choose the correct answer:

(Story)

1. The posters encourage students to
a) use more water b) turn off the tap while brushing
c) run in the halls d) skip school
2. Mr. Youssef is the
a) the head teacher b) a student
c) the school cleaner d) a parent

2 Answer the questions:

(Story)

1. Where did the school put the posters made by the students?
2. What reward did the students receive from the head teacher?

3 Choose the correct answer:

(General)

1. The tourists love to near the coral reefs in summer.
 a) snorkel b) build c) dye d) cook
2. My grandmother always wears her beautiful gold
 a) lamps b) t-shirt c) bracelets d) fossils
3. They used stones and bricks to build the ancient temple.
 a) plastic b) colored c) wooden d) dirty
4. The protected the turtles on the beach from being harmed.
 a) bench b) factory c) mountain d) national park
5. The farmers use to water their crops during dry seasons.
 a) irrigation b) electricity c) fossil d) necklace

Week14: General

1 True or False:

(Story)

1. The friends didn't continue the project when they heard their unkind classmate. ()
2. Farida took photos of the water problems around the school. ()

2 Answer the questions:

(Story)

1. What message did Farida put on one of her posters?
 ►
2. What is the main theme of the story?
 ►

3 Choose the correct answer:

(General)

1. I practice sports every day.
 a) should b) can't c) able to d) mustn't
2. Last year, they to Paris for their vacation.
 a) go b) went c) gone d) going
3. She to the gym every morning.
 a) is going b) are going c) goes d) go
4. He the project at the moment.
 a) does b) did c) done d) is doing
5. I hear you clearly because of the noise.
 a) can b) can't c) must d) able to

Part 3

Al-Azhar Practice

Marks: 60

Al-Azhar Practice

1

1

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

around - Do - fun - favorite - do

- Sara : ❶ you like reading stories?
Omar : Yes, I ❷ I read every night before bed.
Sara : What is your ❸ story?
Omar : My favorite is about a young hero who travels ❹ the world.
Sara : That sounds ❺ !

2

Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. souvenir - bracelet - necklace - dolphin
2. swim - snorkel - paint - dive
3. happy - sad - green - excited
4. tigers - tourists - workers - carpenters
5. winter - summer - holiday - spring

3

Choose the correct answer:

1. We went to the (school - market - hospital) to buy souvenirs.
2. People love to see the (coral reefs - trees - mountains) in the sea.
3. My dad is a carpenter. He can (make - stand - choose) furniture.

4. Fady usually feels (relaxed - tired - quiet) after school.
5. Maged stood in front of the statue to (smile - learn - take) a photo.
6. We (didn't - doesn't - does) go to the market to buy souvenirs yesterday.
7. They (was - is - aren't) at the library now.
8. I am (writing - write - wrote) an email now.
9. We are (must - able - can) to visit the museum.
10. He (plays - play - playing) football every Friday.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last month, a group of tourists visited Khan El Khalili in Cairo. They walked through the ancient streets and saw many colorful shops. Some tourists bought gold jewelry, while others chose handmade bags. They stopped at a small café to drink mint tea and taste Egyptian sweets. Before leaving, they took photos with the shopkeepers and promised to return on their next trip.

A Answer the following questions:

1. When did the tourists visit Khan El Khalili?



2. What did some tourists buy?



3. What drink did they have at the café?



B Choose the correct answer:

4. They walked through the (wide - ancient - dusty - empty) streets.
5. The tourists took photos with the (shopkeepers - teachers - buildings - cars).

5

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. went - museum - to - learn - new - the - to - things - We.



2. tourists - souvenirs - like - buy - Many - to.



3. Maged - did - What - buy - from - the - market?



4. picnic - tree - big - under - a - had - we.



5. ends - school - The - day - p.m - at - 1:30 - every.



6

Write a paragraph of 5 sentences using the following guiding elements:

"Our countryside"

► Ideas to help you:

picnic - fresh - ducks - happy - food

Handwriting practice area with four sets of dashed lines for writing.

Marks: 60

Al-Azhar Practice

2

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

souvenir - sister - train - market - travel

- Ali : Good morning, Omar. How was your trip to the ① ?
 Omar : It was great! I bought a ② for my ③
 Ali : How did you ④ there?
 Omar : We went by ⑤

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. bus - train - camel - orange
2. bread - rice - pen - cheese
3. hotel - apple - museum - school
4. run - swim - read - banana
5. teacher - doctor - father - nurse

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. We bought (~~schools~~ - ~~souvenirs~~ - ~~doors~~) from Khan El-Khalili market.
2. We visited an ancient (~~temple~~ - ~~company~~ - ~~river~~) in Luxor.
3. The farmers grow (~~meat~~ - ~~crops~~ - ~~weeds~~) in the fields.
4. We saw (~~cars~~ - ~~toys~~ - ~~coral~~) reefs in the Red Sea.
5. I sent an (~~email~~ - ~~elephant~~ - ~~Earth~~) to my friend.
6. We (~~go~~ - ~~goes~~ - ~~went~~) to Fayoum last year.
7. She (~~are~~ - ~~is~~ - ~~am~~) reading a book now.
8. They (~~buy~~ - ~~buys~~ - ~~bought~~) a camera yesterday.
9. He (~~plays~~ - ~~play~~ - ~~played~~) football every weekend.
10. They (~~am~~ - ~~is~~ - ~~are~~) watching TV now.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Friday, my family and I visited the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. We saw many ancient artifacts, including statues, jewelry, and mummies. My sister loved the golden mask of King Tutankhamun. We joined a guided tour to learn about the history of ancient Egypt. After the tour, we bought some souvenirs from the museum shop and took pictures in front of the building. It was an unforgettable day.

A Answer the following questions:

1. Where did the family go?
2. What did the sister love?
3. What did they buy?

▶

▶

▶

B Choose the correct answer:

4. The museum is in (Alexandria - Cairo - Aswan - Fayoum).
5. They joined a guided tour to learn about (modern Cairo - ancient Egypt - Roman history - Egyptian schools).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. morning - every - milk - glass - drinks - of - a - He.
2. window - opened - He - air - the - fresh - for.
3. a - mother - meal - cooked - delicious - My - yesterday.
4. has - school - library - books - many - The - interesting.
5. trip - and - exciting - fun - was - The - boat.

6 Write an email of 5 sentences to your friend telling him about the weather in Egypt:

Your name is Wael and your email is wael@gmail.com, your friend's name is Magdy and his email is magdy@gmail.com:

sunny - Cairo - cold - perfect - winter

...
📍 ☆ 📎 A 🗑️

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 60

Al-Azhar Practice

3

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

research - emergency - community - brave - vehicles

Ali : Our ① has many ② like buses and ambulances.

Omar : Yes, of course. why do we have many ambulance cars?

Ali : in an ③ , we drive them to help others. Also, we need ④ people to help.

Omar : I will ⑤ more ways to help.

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. Luxor - Cairo - Aswan - bread.
2. spoon - hot - cold - tall
3. desert - mountain - river - camel
4. bed - chair - car- table
5. shirt - trousers - jacket - rice

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. The (weather - watch - water) was sunny.
2. He bought a (shirt - picture - ticket) for the train.
3. The market sells fresh (chess - bread - dogs).
4. She painted a (picture - board - book) of the garden.
5. We stayed in a (hotel - hand - bottle).
6. We (visit - visited - visits) the pyramids last summer.
7. She (write - is writing - wrote) an email now.
8. They didn't (travel - travels - traveled) to Cairo last Friday.
9. I (eat - eating - eaten) breakfast at 7 a.m.
10. He (study - studies - studied) for the test yesterday.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hany is a 10-year old boy. He lives in a village near Cairo with his family. Yesterday went to the airport to meet his uncle who came from London. They greeted each other warmly and took a taxi home. On the way, his uncle told him stories about his trip and gave him a small gift from England.

A Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Hany go? ▶
2. Why did he go there? ▶
3. What did his uncle tell him? ▶

B Choose the correct answer:

4. They (**watched** - talked - greeted) each other warmly.
5. Hany's uncle gave him a small (**gift** - bike - toy) from England.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. big - works - hospital - a - father - in - My. ▶
2. to - train - Aswan - **They** - by - yesterday - traveled. ▶
3. gave - **Our** - lesson - teacher - new - us - a. ▶
4. **We** - beautiful - saw - in - reefs - the - sea - coral. ▶
5. flowers - last - week - **He** - the - planted - garden - in. ▶

6 Write a paragraph of 5 sentences using the following guiding elements:

"Natural resources in Egypt"

► Ideas to help you:

**gold - Western Desert - natural gas
solar power - wind**

Al-Azhar Practice

4

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

temples - project - home - about - finish

- Omar** : Why are you ❶ so early today?
Mona : I have to ❷ my homework before lunch.
Omar : What subject is it ❸ ?
Mona : It's about the ancient ❹ in Luxor.
Omar : Good luck with your ❺ !

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. English - French - football - Arabic
2. market - board - park - museum
3. bread - water - juice - shirt
4. walk - write - sing - rice
5. window - shirt - trousers - jacket

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. He (read - mixed - fixed) the chair in the kitchen.
2. They planted (flowers - flours - fires) in the garden.
3. I saw an ancient (coin - corn - can) in the museum.
4. He bought a (country - camera - train) for the trip.
5. We saw (boards - chairs - birds) in the trees.
6. They (go - goes - gone) swimming every Friday.
7. We (watch - watched - watching) a film last night.
8. I (read - reads - am reading) a story now.
9. He (cleaned - cleans - clean) his room yesterday.
10. We (walk - walks - walked) to school every day.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

The Nile River is the longest river in the world. It flows through many countries in Africa and ends in Egypt. People use its water for drinking, farming, and fishing. Many cities and villages are built along its sides. The river also has a beautiful view and attracts visitors from all over the world. The Nile is an important part of Egypt's history and life today.

A

Answer the following questions:

1. Where does the Nile River end?
2. What do people use the Nile's water for?
3. Why do visitors come to the Nile?

B

Choose the correct answer:

4. The Nile is the (shortest - longest - widest) river in the world.
5. The Nile flows through many (countries - animals - schools).

5

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. carried - camel - goods - desert - The - across - the.
2. museum - Saturday - next - the - visit - will - We.
3. the - We - park - enjoyed - in - picnic - a.
4. farmers - the - hard - in - fields - work - The.
5. We - small - hotel - stayed - in - a.

6

Write a paragraph of 5 sentences using the following guiding elements:

"A visit to The High Dam"

► Ideas to help you:

electricity energy - High - Aswan
- Nile

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Term 1

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

electricity - pollution - solar - smart - technology

Technology is growing day by day. A ❶ city is a modern city that uses technology to make life easier for people. These cities are good for the environment because they use clean energy. They often use ❷ panels on the roofs of buildings to generate clean ❸ This helps to reduce air and water ❹ , making the city a healthier place to live.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I am Hala; my friend is a scientist. Her job is very interesting. She studies plants and how they grow. She told me that every plant has different parts. The roots grow under the ground and help the plant get water. The stem grows up from the ground and holds the leaves and flowers. The leaves use sunlight to make food for the plant. The flowers make seeds for new plants. She says it is very important to protect our plants and trees.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The text is mainly about
 a) the weather b) the parts of a plant
 c) my friend's family d) seeds
- The roots of a plant help it to get
 a) sunlight b) food c) seeds d) water

B Answer the following questions:

- What does the stem of a plant do?
 ►
- What do the leaves use to make food for the plant?
 ►
- Give a suitable title to the text.
 ►

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. our - important - **It's** - to - protect - planet.



2. to - the - **We** - water - plants - need.



6. The Story

A

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The head teacher gave the children certificates of achievement. ()

2. The teacher did not agree with the children's project. ()

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the children take the certificates?



4. Where did the school hang the posters?



7

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We must (**helping**) people in our community.

2. They (**plant**) flowers in their garden at this moment.

8

Punctuate the following:

1. we went to the museum last sunday.

2. what is your favorite animal.



9

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Important jobs in your community"

► Guiding elements:

paramedic - mechanic

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- What did Mariam visit last week?
 - the Grand Egyptian Museum.
 - the Aswan High Dam.
 - Cairo.
 - A workshop.
- Why is the High Dam important for Egypt? Because
 - it causes floods
 - it generates electricity
 - it pollutes the river
 - it makes rain
- What is the name of the lake behind the dam?
 - Lake Nasser
 - Lake Victoria
 - Lake Tana
 - Lake Aswan
- What should we do with our historical places?
 - Pollute them
 - Sell them
 - Protect them
 - Build on them

2 Choose the correct answer:

- A person who makes clothes is called a
 - mechanic
 - tailor
 - dentist
 - farmer
- We wear a school every day.
 - picnic
 - holiday
 - uniform
 - painting
- is causing the weather to become hotter and storms stronger.
 - Climate change
 - Cooking
 - Traffic
 - Gardening

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

colored stones - bricks - gold - granite - marble

Ancient Egyptians used many different materials for building. They used ① from the desert to build their homes. For the large temples and statues, they used hard stones like ② Sometimes, they would also use different ③ to decorate the walls and floors. Women wore jewelry made from ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Scientists are very important in our life. They do researches to find solution for any problem. Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist. He was born in Egypt in 1933 and showed a great passion for learning from an early age. He studied at Ain Shams University. Later, he traveled to the United States to continue his scientific research and further his career. His dedication to science has made him a well-known figure in the scientific community.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed was born in
a) 1930 b) 1933 c) 1943 d) 1953
- Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed studied in before he went to the United States.
a) Ain Shams University b) Cairo University
c) The United States d) Oxford University

B Answer the following questions:

- Give a suitable title to the text.
▶
- What did Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed do after studying at Ain Shams University?
▶
- What has Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed's dedication to science made him?
▶

Revision

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. is - to - and - water - **It** - save - important - energy. ▶

2. a - dress - **My** - has - linen - grandma. ▶

6. The Story

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teachers helped to spread the message by
 - a) giving them more money
 - b) talking about saving water
 - c) making posters
 - d) fixing all the leaks
2. Everyone at the school became after the project.
 - a) water savers
 - b) water takers
 - c) gardeners
 - d) artists

B Answer the following questions:

3. What messages did the posters have? ▶
4. What did a classmate say to Noor near the hallway? ▶

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We should (**keeping**) our school clean.
2. She (**like**) to help her community every weekend.

8 Punctuate the following:

1. are you happy with your new school ▶
2. i visited my friend yesterday ▶

9 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Protecting our planet"

▶ Guiding elements:

pollution - recycling

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice

3



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1

Listen and circle the correct answer:

- Ras Mohamed National Park is in
 a) South Sinai b) Cairo c) Luxor d) Aswan
- Ras Mohamed National Park is famous for
 a) mountains and caves b) coral reefs and fish
 c) old temples d) hot springs
- Salma went in the park.
 a) diving b) swimming c) snorkeling d) hiking
- Visitors should to protect the park.
 a) plant trees b) keep their place clean
 c) build hotels d) feed the fish

2

Choose the correct answer:

- When I arrived at the museum, I went to the to get a map and ask for help.
 a) information desk b) brochure
 c) temples d) plateau
- We should always follow the traffic rules and listen to the
 a) driver b) road c) car d) traffic officer
- My father likes to catch some fish with his small from the Nile River.
 a) fishing net b) cart c) knife d) fisherman

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

community - proud - care - moral - peaceful

The story of the proud rose teaches us a lesson. The ① of this story is "everyone, no matter how small, can make a difference". So when we work together to take ② of our school, our town, and our whole country, Egypt, we all feel happy and ③ It's great to live in a place where people help their ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

In today's world, many cities are changing to become more modern and eco-friendly. A smart city is a modern city that uses technology to make people's lives better. Smart cities use solar energy and electric buses to reduce pollution. They also have good traffic systems to prevent accidents. In a smart city, people can use apps to find out about public transport or to pay for things. There are also a lot of green spaces for people to relax and enjoy the environment. Living in a smart city helps create a cleaner, safer, and happier place for everyone.

A

Choose the correct answer:

- The text is mainly about
a) old cities b) smart cities c) traffic d) pollution
- Smart cities use to make people's lives better.
a) technology b) pollution c) accidents d) old cars

B

Answer the following questions:

- How do smart cities help the environment?
▶
- What apps can people use in a smart city?
▶
- Why do they have good traffic systems?
▶

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. beautiful - **The** - coral - reefs - has - sea.
2. electricity - Aswan - High - Dam - **The** - generates.

6. The Story

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ahmed used to take photos of the problems with his
 a) camera b) phone c) tablet d) notebook
2. Mr. Youssef was a at the school.
 a) player b) head teacher c) cleaner d) gardener

E Answer the following questions:

3. What was Farida's idea for the project?
4. What is the main problem in the story?

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My grandma was happy because she (**plant**) flowers last week.
2. The tailor (**make**) a beautiful dress now.

8 Punctuate the following:

1. what is your favorite color
2. it is a beautiful day today

9 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"My visit to the museum"

► Guiding elements:

- When did you go there?
- Why do you like it?



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Where does Adam live?

- a) in a modern city b) in a small village
c) in the desert d) near the sea

2. What is Adam's job?

- a) a paramedic b) a mechanic
c) a tailor d) a farmer

3. What does Adam's city use for electricity?

- a) wind energy b) solar energy
c) fossil fuel d) electricity

4. What does Adam's friend do?

- a) drives a bus b) sells clothes
c) saves lives d) repairs cars

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A person who repairs cars and other engines is a

- a) tailor b) mechanic c) paramedic d) scientist

2. We can use to make electricity from the sun.

- a) solar power b) wind c) coal d) water

3. The Aswan High Dam helps to control the from the Nile River.

- a) flood b) drought c) storm d) wind

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

important - marine - coral - environment - safe

A clean and healthy environment is important for all living creatures on Earth. We must protect our ❶ environment. The Red Sea has beautiful ❷ reefs and colorful fish. We should keep the sea clean to keep the fish and other sea animals ❸ Bees are also very ❹ for the land environment. We all need to take care of our environment.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Every day at school is full of activities. Students arrive in the morning and go to their classrooms. They study many different subjects like math, science, and English. During break time, they play with their friends in the playground or eat a snack. After a long day of learning, they go home and do their homework. They also have fun activities at school, like sports and art. The school is a place for students to learn new things and make friends. Going to school helps children grow and prepare for the future.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Students during break time.
 - study math
 - go home
 - play with friends
 - do homework
- Students do their homework
 - after a long day of learning
 - during break time
 - in the morning
 - during sports

B Answer the following questions:

- What are the subjects that students study at school?
▶
- Summarize the text in two sentences.
▶
- What do students do in the morning when they arrive at school?
▶

Revision

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. cake - a - **She** - baked - delicious - yesterday.

2. help - for - **Where** - visitors - can - k?

6. The Story

A

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. A tap in the school bathroom was dripping water. ()

2. Noor took photos of the problems with her camera. ()

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What problem did Noor, Ahmed, and Farida notice at their school?

4. What was Farida's idea for their project?

7

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You (**shouldn't**) be quite in the library.

2. My friend and I (**visit**) London now.

8

Punctuate the following:

1. it's windy in alexandria.

2. how long is the Nile river?

9

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your dream job"

▶ Guiding elements:

-What do you want to be in the future?

-Why do you like this job?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice

5



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- Layla and her family are
 a) farmers b) tailors c) Americans d) Bedouins
- Layla's family sometimes called travelers because they
 a) live in the desert b) make carpets
 c) move from place to place d) use looms
- Layla's mother makes carpets from
 a) cotton b) wool c) oil d) gold
- Layla's mother makes the carpets by
 a) using a car b) using a loom
 c) using a sewing machine d) using her hands

2 Choose the correct answer:

- My brother wants to be a to fix cars and other engines.
 a) teacher b) paramedic c) beekeeper d) mechanic
- The plant's is what you see above the ground.
 a) leaves b) stem c) seeds d) flowers
- We should reduce air and water to protect our environment.
 a) electricity b) pollution
 c) energy d) technology

**awards - chemistry - discoveries - nanoparticles -
United States**

Mostafa El-Sayed is a famous Egyptian scientist. He was born in 1933 and became an expert in ❶ and nanoscience. After studying in Cairo, he continued his research in the United States. He is known for “El-Sayed’s Rule” and his work with gold ❷ to help detect and treat cancer. His ❸ have earned him many important ❹ , and he is a great source of pride for Egypt.

4

Egypt is a country with many important places that help its people. The Aswan High Dam is a very important place in Egypt. It was built to control the floods of the River Nile. The dam also generates a lot of electricity which is used all over the country. The area behind the dam is now a very large lake called Lake Nasser. We can go sailing and fishing there. We should always protect our historical places and our water resources for the future. Taking care of these places helps keep Egypt beautiful and strong.

A

1. The text is mainly about

- a) the River Nile b) Fayoum
c) the Aswan High Dam d) fishing

- 2.** Lake is located behind the dam.

- a) Nasser b) Nile c) Aswan d) Red

Answer the following questions:

- 3. Summarize the text in one sentence.**

- #### 4. What can people do at Lake Nasser?

- ### 5. Why was the High Dam built?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. to - It's - important - the - help - environment.

2. likes - make - to - He - a tailor - clothes - as.

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. A small drip from a tap can waste a lot of water. ()

2. The classmates were very supportive of the project from the beginning. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did the three friends do on the first day of their project?

4. How did the school start to spread the "Water Savers" message?

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We (visit) the Grand Egyptian Museum last year.

2. He (read) a book about our nature now.

8 Punctuate the following:

1. what is your favorite color

2. we should help our community

9 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your favorite subject"

► Guiding elements:

- What is it? - Why do you like it?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- People use the Nile water for
 - fishing
 - swimming
 - running
 - playing
- Families grow crops like
 - cotton
 - wheat
 - rice
 - vegetables.
- Villagers meet in the in the evening.
 - club
 - market
 - playground
 - school
- The Nile gives to the land.
 - hope
 - love
 - life
 - prize

2 Choose the correct answer:

- Granite is a type of
 - cloth
 - plant
 - stone
 - cotton
- We use to make books.
 - gold
 - paper
 - fuel
 - silver
- The temple is a/an building.
 - modern
 - ancient
 - slow
 - natural

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pack - board - passport - book - fly

Traveling abroad needs careful preparation. You must have a ¹ before you travel abroad. It's important to ² your flight early to avoid any problems. The night before your trip, make sure to ³ your suitcase carefully. At the airport, travelers wait at the gate to ⁴ the plane.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is famous for its wonderful history and beautiful places. Tourists from all over the world visit the pyramids, temples, and the River Nile to enjoy the culture. Many people in Egypt work in tourism, farming, and factories. Farmers use irrigation to grow crops like wheat, rice, and vegetables, which are important for food and trade. Egypt has sunny weather most of the year, making it perfect for using solar power to produce clean energy. This energy helps power homes, schools, and farms while protecting the environment for future generations.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Egypt is famous for its
a) history b) snow c) beaches only d) forests
- Farmers use to grow crops.
a) electricity b) irrigation c) granite d) oil

B Answer the following questions:

- What do tourists visit in Egypt?
▶

- Why is Egypt good for using solar power?
▶

- What is the main idea of the text?
▶

Revision

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. modern - uses - technology - **Benban** - Solar Park. ▶

2. workers - with - engineers - local - work - **The**. ▶

6. The Story

A

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Everyone at the school became a Water Saver. ()

2. The teachers ignored the friends' message. ()

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What did Noor, Ahmed, and Farida receive? ▶

4. What fun activity did some classes start? ▶

7

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. She (play) football every day.

2. We must (respecting) the school rules.

8

Punctuate the following:

1. egypt has sunny weather most of the year ▶

2. what does Maha collect in the morning ▶

9

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"The importance of unity"

▶ Guiding elements:

cooperation - group work

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice

7



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Bedouin people live in (houses - tents - apartments - hotels).
2. They raise animals like (camels and goats - cows and sheep - cats and dogs - birds and fish).
3. Bedouin people make (carpets and jewelry - machines and tools - bread and cakes - bread and cakes).
4. At night, families (sleep early - watch TV - work - share stories).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Papyrus is a type of (plant - stone - metal - cloth) used in ancient Egypt.
2. Jewelry is made from (cotton - gold - bricks - wool).
3. Linen is made from (cotton - silk - wool - flax).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

protected - crafts - materials - machines - experts

Egypt's ancient and modern culture is famous worldwide for its traditions and history. Some areas are ① to keep animals, plants, and nature safe. People use different ② like wood, clay, and metal to make beautiful ③ that show Egyptian skills. New ④ help factories work faster and improve the quality of products for the economy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Tourists love visiting Egypt's colorful markets and historic sites that tell stories of its rich past. In the markets, they can find ancient jewelry, handmade carpets, spices, and souvenirs. Along the Nile, tourists see wooden boats sailing peacefully, offering a beautiful view of daily life. The warm and clean climate is perfect for outdoor activities such as sailing and sightseeing. With its history, culture, and friendly people, Egypt remains one of the most popular tourist favorite places in the world.

Revision

A

Choose the correct answer:

1. Tourists visit (beaches only - markets and historic sites - deserts only - forests).
2. In the markets, they can find ancient (schools - bags - pets - jewelry).

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What do tourists see in Egypt?
4. Why is the climate good for outdoor activities?
5. What do tourists see along the Nile?

5

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. protect - Villagers - environment - to - work - the - hard.
2. desert - live - tents - in - the - Bedouins - in.

6. The Story

A

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Noor and her friends made posters.
2. The school cleaner did not help.

()
()

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What problem did Noor and her friends find?
4. How did they try to solve it?

7

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. He (don't) like to eat vegetables.
2. They (was) happy yesterday.

8

Punctuate the following:

1. the Nile River is very long
2. where do the villagers live

8

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Helping others"

► Guiding elements:

teamwork - sharing

Practice

8



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Farmers use irrigation to

a) water crops

b) build houses

c) drive cars

d) catch fish

2. They grow vegetables like

a) rice and wheat

b) apples and bananas

c) tomatoes and cucumbers

d) corn and beans

3. Machines help with

a) cooking and cleaning

b) planting and harvesting

c) driving and flying

d) selling and buying

4. The sun helps plants

a) grow well

b) sleep

c) fly

d) swim

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Solar panels produce power.

a) electrical

b) fuel

c) gas

d) wood

2. Clay is used to make

a) jewelry

b) carpets

c) bricks

d) clothes

3. Papyrus was used for making

a) furniture

b) paper

c) food

d) tools

Revision

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

environment - energy - pollution - clean - factories

People around the world are looking for safe and renewable ways to produce electricity. In many countries, people use solar ① to make electricity for homes, schools, and hospitals. This reduces ② from cars and ③ that use fuel to produce power. Using this technology helps protect the ④ and keeps the air fresh. Many families are happy to live in a safe and healthy place for future generations.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt has many natural resources like gold, granite, and clay. These resources are used in making jewelry, buildings, and pottery. Many people work in factories to make products from these materials. Egypt's climate is dry and hot for most of the year, which makes it perfect for using solar energy. Electricity from solar power helps homes, schools, and farms. Farmers use irrigation systems to grow crops such as wheat, corn, and vegetables. By using clean energy, Egypt can protect the environment and reduce pollution. Solar power is an important way to save fuel and create a healthier future for everyone.

A

Choose the correct answer:

1. Egypt's natural resources include
a) gold and granite b) water and snow
c) wood and fish d) crops and wheat
2. Solar power is
a) dirty b) clean c) noisy d) harmful

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Name two natural resources in Egypt? ►
4. How does solar power help farmers? ►
5. Why is Egypt good for solar energy? ►

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. night - last - **Where** - go - did - you? ▶

2. park - **Ras Mohamed** - national - a - is - famous. ▶

6. The Story

A

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The friends made posters about water saving. ()

2. Some students ignored the message. ()

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Who helped fix the leaking sink? ▶

4. What was the school's response to the project? ▶

7

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. They (**was**) playing football yesterday.

2. You (**should**) waste water.

8

Punctuate the following:

1. farmers grow crops with irrigation ▶

2. solar energy is clean and useful ▶

9

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Protecting our planet"

▶ Guiding elements:

saving water - working together

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 5

Listening Scripts



Practice 1 on Unit 1

Magdy wakes up early to visit the local market where workers sell lamps and necklaces with Arabic designs. He enjoys taking photos of ancient sites and learning about Egyptian history. In the afternoon, he watches carpenters make furniture from wood. The smell of fresh bread fills the air as he walks to a small museum. Tourists often stop to admire the beautiful art in this cultural area.



Practice 1 on Unit 2

Laila talks with her grandpa about his garden. He grows herbs like mint and basil. They also have hibiscus and jasmine. Grandpa waters plants every morning and removes weeds. He sometimes uses natural fertilizer. Laila likes the smells and asks about olives. Grandpa says olives grow in Egypt and are healthy.



Practice 1 on Unit 3

"Jobs are important for our community. A tailor makes clothes for people. A mechanic fixes cars and other vehicles. We also have traffic officers who help us cross the road safely and control the flow of cars. A street cleaner is a very important job, as they help keep our city beautiful by cleaning the streets. All these jobs are essential for our daily lives."



Practice 1 on Unit 4

Ancient Egyptians used many natural materials. They built temples from stone, made gold jewelry for kings and queens, and wore linen clothes made from flax plants. They also used clay to make pots and bricks, and colorful stones to

decorate statues. These materials were strong, beautiful, and lasted for thousands of years.



Practice 1 on Unit 5

Egypt has many important projects. The Grand Egyptian Museum will show treasures from ancient Egypt. In Aswan, the High Dam gives people electricity and protects farms from floods. In New Cairo, there are modern buildings and clean streets. Many tourists visit Egypt to see these projects and learn about its history.



General Practice 1

"Hello, my name is Salma. I am visiting my grandma's house. She lives in a small village, not a big city. People in her village live in a great community. She told me she uses solar energy to heat her house. We visited a small workshop and saw a mechanic fixing a car. My grandma wants me to visit the new museum with her next week."



General Practice 2

Hello, my name is Mariam "Last week, I visited the Aswan High Dam. It is a very important place in Egypt. The dam helps to control the floods from the Nile River and also generates a lot of electricity for the country. It has a beautiful view of Lake Nasser. We should always protect our historical places and our water resources to keep them safe for future generations."



General Practice 3

"My name is Radwa. Last weekend, I visited Ras Mohamed National Park in South Sinai. The park is famous for its clear water, beautiful coral reefs, and many kinds of fish. I went snorkeling

and saw colorful sea creatures. There are also mangrove trees and rare birds in the park. It is important to keep the park clean so that people and animals can enjoy it for many years."

General Practice 4

"My name is Adam. I live in a modern city that uses technology to make our lives better. We have a good public transport system, and the city uses solar energy to provide electricity. I work as a tailor and I love my job because I make beautiful clothes for people. My friend is a paramedic and he saves people's lives. We should all protect our environment by reducing pollution."

General Practice 5

"My name is Layla. I live in the desert with my family. We are Bedouins. We are sometimes called travelers because we move from place to place. My mother is famous for making beautiful carpets from wool. She uses a loom to weave the wool into wonderful patterns. It is an old and important tradition for us."

General Practice 6

In southern Egypt, people live near the River Nile. They use its water for farming and fishing. Many families grow crops like wheat and corn. In the evening, villagers often meet in the market to sell fresh vegetables and fruits. The Nile gives life to the land and helps people every day

General Practice 7

In the Western Desert, Bedouin people live in tents and raise animals like camels and goats. They make crafts such as carpets and jewelry. The desert is dry, but people work hard to protect their environment. At night, families gather around fires to share stories. Tourists visit to learn about their culture and enjoy the desert's beauty.

General Practice 8

Farmers in Egypt use irrigation to water their crops. They grow vegetables like tomatoes and cucumbers. Many workers use machines to help with planting and harvesting. The sun shines brightly, helping plants grow well. Some farmers also grow fruits such as dates and grapes. They sell their products in local markets and earn money to support their families.

Part 6

Answers Key

Unit 1

Lesson 1

(SB) Listen again and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T 3- T 4- F

(SB) Listen again and choose the correct answer:

- 1- (c) ancient sites 2- (d) necklace
3- (a) history

Exercises on Lesson 1

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (b) market 2- (d) visit
3- (a) make 4- (c) museum
5- (d) take 6- (b) playing
7- (a) necklace 8- (a) wood
9- (b) coins 10- (d) smell

2- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- market 2- coins
3- walking 4- music

3- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (c) coin 2- (c) history

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- She took many photos
4- The carpenter was making furniture.
5- A visit to Khan El Khalili

4- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- We walked to the museum to learn new things.
2- Tourists like to buy many souvenirs from the market.
3- People like to learn about our history.
4- What do they buy from the market?

5- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Have you ever visited Khan El Khalili?
2- She wore a necklace that she bought yesterday.

Lesson 2

(SB) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- F 3- T 4- F 5- T

Exercises on Lesson 2

1- Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

- 1- (c) national park 2- (b) coral reefs
3- (a) clean 4- (d) marina life

- 5- (b) protected area 6- (a) snorkel
7- (b) peaceful 8- (c) rules
9- (d) mangrove 10- (d) dive

2- Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

- 1- (d) swims 2- (c) jumps 3- (a) live
4- (a) visit 5- (b) looks 6- (d) doesn't
7- (a) don't 8- (c) Do
9- (d) do 10- (a) contains

3- Read and complete using words from the box:

- 1- protected 2- clean and safe
3- landscapes 4- coral reefs
5- culture

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (c) landscape 2- (b) colorful

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Visitors also learn about the culture of the local Bedouins who live nearby.
4- Dolphins and sea turtles.
5- Ras Mohamed is a great city. Tourists visit it to enjoy the landscape and learn about our culture. (Any acceptable answer)

5- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- People visit Ras Mohamed every year.
2- Ras Mohamed is a famous National Park.
3- The sea is full of colorful fish.
4- She is always happy and active.
(She is always active and happy).
5- Does nature help protect the park?

6- Read and write the correct form:

- 1- travels 2- Do
3- doesn't 4- does
5- works 6- helps
7- don't live 8- rains
9- read 10- clean

7- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Ras Mohamed is a famous national park.
2- What do the Bedouins teach visitors?
3- The Red Sea has beautiful coral reefs.
4- When does the train leave?

Lesson 3

Step Ahead

(SB) Read and complete the text:

- 1- fishermen 2- fishing nets
3- harvest 4- spins

Exercises on Lesson 3

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- (b) harvest 2- (c) fishing net
3- (b) loom 4- (a) dye
5- (c) spins 6- (b) accompany
7- (a) village 8- (c) loom
9- (d) feed 10- (a) make

2- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- villages 2- fishing nets
3- spin 4- dye

(SB) Match the words to their definitions:

- (1-c) **accompany**: to go somewhere with another person.
(2-d) **looms**: machines for making cloth or carpets.
(3-b) **fishing net**: a tool made of rope or string used to catch fish.
(4-a) **dye**: to color cloth or wool using a special liquid.

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (c) Nile River 2- (b) festivals

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Ali's village. (Any acceptable answer)
4- She often sits outside, weaving colorful patterns on a traditional loom, turning soft wool into beautiful carpets.
5- Life is peaceful in Ali's village.

5- (SB) Listen and circle the word that ends with /er/ sound:

- 1- hare 2- there 3- pear

6- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- I accompany my father to catch fish.
2- We sit outside and drink tea.
3- They go to the market on Fridays.
4- Do you live in a city or a village?
5- What job would you like to do?

7- Punctuate the following:

- 1- My friend and I like to visit villages during the summer.
2- Mr. Adel enjoys weaving carpets.

Lessons 4-5

(SB) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (c) anthem 2- (b) Arabic

- 3- (d) break 4- (b) tired

Exercises on Lessons 4&5

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (c) take our books 3- (d) subject
2- (a) salute the flag 5- (b) chat
4- (c) tricky 7- (a) farms
6- (c) factories 9- (b) physical education
8- (c) typical 11- (a) topics
10- (c) rest

2- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- wake up 2- pack
3- salute 4- chat

3- Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

- 1- The students salute the flag in the morning.
2- Amir has a quick breakfast every day.
3- The school day ends at 2:30.
4- Samira learns different subjects in class.
5- Tell me about your school day.

4- Punctuate the following:

- 1- What time do you usually go home from school?
2- Every morning, I wake up at six am.

Practice 1 test on Unit 1

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- begin 2- subject 3- math
4- sandwich 5- finish

2- Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- 1- bird – (sea turtle)
2- ate – (eat)
3- school – (dining room)
4- subject – (skirt)
5- floor – (bed)

3- Choose the correct answer

- 1- loom 2- net 3- safe
4- talk 5- helps

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer

- 1- village life 2- science

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- He waters the plants in the garden.
4- Because we learn about animals and nature.
5- In the village square.

5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1- I watch a movie with my family.
2- People sell their crafts in the market.

Answers Key

- 3- Why does he get up early?
- 4- Do they go fishing every day?
- 5- We eat a sandwich during the break.

Practice 2 test on Unit 1

1- Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- 7:30 2- Arabic
- 3- tricky 4- play with my friends

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- bread 2- handmade
- 3- mangrove 4- dive
- 5- Do

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- amazing 2- snorkel 3- turtles 4- culture

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- necklaces 2- museum

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- He visits the famous Khan El Khalili.
- 4- They watch people baking bread and making furniture by hand.
- 5- A visit to Khan El Khalili.
(Any acceptable answer)

5- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- Adam and his family visited Khan El Khalili last week.
- 2- We have subjects like math and Arabic.

6- The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T 2- F

B Answer the following questions:

- 3- The friends noticed a dripping tap and a broken pipe.
- 4- Noor was sad and worried.

7- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- watches 2- don't go

8- Punctuate the following sentence:

- 1- First they buy souvenirs from A swan.
- 2- They eat rice, bread and vegetables

Unit 2

Lesson 1

(SB) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (c) It looks incredible.
- 2- (b) Water, sunlight, and care.
- 3- (b) Parsley, mint, and basil
- 4- (c) Mint tea.
- 5- (b) To make a tasty drink.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (b) Weeds 2- (a) tasty
- 3- (a) herbs 4- (b) soil
- 5- (d) relax 6- (c) grow
- 7- (b) care 8- (d) smells

2- (SB) Read and complete the text:

- 1- oil 2- water 3- herbs 4- grow

3- Read and complete the text

- 1- mint 2- sunlight 3- weeds 4- pulls

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (c) morning
- 2- (c) a natural material that helps plants grow

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- She grows basil and mint.
- 4- Laila feels proud of her garden.
- 5- Laila's garden. (Any acceptable answer)

5- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- My uncle grows basil and mint.
- 2- She waters the plants every day.
- 3- People in Egypt use herbs in cooking.
- 4- Farmers grow fruits like figs and guava.
- 5- Weeds can be harmful to the plants.

6- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Laila sits with her grandpa every afternoon.
- 2- Does he pull out the weeds?

Lesson 2

(SB) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- F 3- T

Exercises on Lesson 2

1- Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

- 1- (a) shade 2- (b) wet
- 3- (d) protect 4- (d) weather
- 5- (c) sunny

2- Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

- 1- (c) are playing 2- (b) am talking
- 3- (c) is doing 4- (d) are eating
- 5- (a) is watching 6- (c) is reading
- 7- (a) am cleaning

3- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (b) sunny and warm 2- (c) calm

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- People are wearing sunglasses and hats to protect themselves from the sun.
- 4- They are talking and relaxing.

- 5- When the weather is hot, people go to gardens. They wear sunglasses and hats to protect themselves from the sun.

4- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1- is playing | 2- Are you eating |
| 3- am not wearing | 4- are visiting |
| 5- is writing | 6- are not walking |
| 7- are visiting | |

5- Form a Wh-question for the underlined:

- What are you eating for breakfast now?
- When (What time) is she going to school?
- Where are they living this month?
- What is he studying at university this semester?
- Where are you playing?
- Where are the children playing?
- What is he drinking now?
- What is the shop selling today?
- Who are you meeting at the café?
- What is she teaching this year?

6- Punctuate the following:

- The sky is full of clouds.
- Are people staying indoors because it's cold?

Lesson 3

(SB) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- T 2- F 3- T 4- F 5- T

(SB) Answer the following questions:

- It is about 6,650 kilometers long.
- Nile perch and tilapia
- In the past, the river flooded and brought good soil. Farmers used this soil to grow food
- Kingfishers, herons, and ducks.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1- (c) longest | 2- (b) through |
| 3- (c) near | 4- (a) dangerous |
| 5- (d) find | 6- (c) animals |
| 7- (d) wheat | 8- (a) travel |

2- Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 1- life | 2- food |
| 3- crocodiles | 4- temples |

3- Circle the word that has a different short vowel sound:

- | | |
|------------|---------------------|
| 1- sit | 2- fence |
| 3- village | 4- set 5- window |

4- Fill the blanks with the words in the box:

- | | | |
|------------|---------------|---------|
| 1- Nile | 2- crocodiles | 3- food |
| 4- flooded | 5- temples | |

5- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- The Nile flows through Egypt from the south.
- Crocodiles live in the Nile River.
- Birds come to find some food.
- People travel in boats on the Nile.
- Farmers grow vegetables and wheat there.

6- Punctuate the following:

- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
- Which bird can you see near the river?

Lessons 4

(SB) Read and answer:

- To Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum.
- They saw camels.

Exercises on Lessons 4

1- Choose the correct answer:

- (c) rare animals and plants
- (a) Valley of the Whales
- (d) fossil museum 4- (b) palm tree
- (c) Wadi El-Hitan

2- Read and complete the text with:

- 1- trip 2- waterfalls 3- ancient 4- history

3- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer

- (c) A special place in the desert
- (c) whale skeletons

B- Answer the following questions:

- In the desert of Fayoum.
- People can see the rare animals and birds.
- Wadi El Rayan is a special place that has big lakes, waterfalls, and sand dunes.

Practice 3 test on Unit 2

خاص بالازهر الشريف

1- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the

- box: 1- jasmine 2- water
3- pull 4- weeds 5- shade

2- Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- computer - (wheat)
- bottle - (eat)
- plant - (dusty - airy - hot))
- pyramids - (lakes)
- phone - (rain)

3- Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1- grow | 2- sunny |
| 3- natural | 4- tasty |
| 5- travel | 6- is planting |
| 7- are you doing | 8- are pulling |

Answers Key

- 9- are playing 10- aren't watering

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer

- 1- wet 2- important

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Mint, basil, and parsley.
4- We must use natural fertilizer and pull out the weeds.
5- To help them stay fresh and green.

5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1- We must water the plants every day.
2- Some herbs are good for health.
3- The jasmine plant smells amazing.
4- We must keep our environment clean.
5- He is sitting and relaxing in the shade.

Practice 4 test on Unit 2

1- Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- protecting 2- harmful
3- better 4- safe

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- clean 2- safe 3- careful

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- kingfisher 2- Egyptian 3- wheat 4- travel

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- Aswan 2- empty

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Egyptians are checking the weather to help people take care of their homes and plants.
4- Because the weather is very hot.
5- The different weather in Egypt.
(Any acceptable answer)

5- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- Plants need water, sunlight and care to grow well.
2- We organized a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park.

6- The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F 2- F

B Answer the following questions:

- 3- In a school.
4- The friends noticed a dripping tap and a broken pipe..

7- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- isn't watching 2- are throwing

8 - Punctuate the following sentence:

- 1- Yes, it tastes good.
2- That's cool.

Unit 3

Lesson 1

(SB) Listen again and answer the questions:

- 1- Because they can help the people and the community.
2- Omar
3- Because he enjoys fixing things
4- They help people in emergencies.

(SB) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (c) doing research about jobs that help the community 2- (c) mechanic
3- (c) He enjoys fixing things.
4- (b) water resource engineer.
5- (c) provide clean water 6- (a) paramedic
7- (b) They help people in emergencies.

(SB) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- delivery person 2- engineers
3- vehicles 4- cross
5- paramedic

(SB) Read and complete:

- 1- tailor 2- research 3- emergency
4- cleaners 5- important

Exercises on Lesson 1

1- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- community 2- emergency
3- Street cleaners 4- control

2- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- All jobs in our community are important.
2- Adam felt embarrassed when he fell down.
3- People shouldn't throw rubbish in the street.
4- The water resources engineers keep water clean.
5- Who controls the cars on the roads?

3- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (b) brings packages
2- (a) traffic officer

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- He helps people in emergencies.
4- Because a street cleaner keeps the roads clean.
5- An architect designs buildings, while a mechanic fixes cars.

4- Punctuate the following:

- 1- The scientist made important discoveries.
- 2- Can I donate food to the shelter?

Lesson 2

(SB) Listen again and answer the questions:

- 1- The garbage in the park is terrible.
- 2- We can bring some garbage bags and make poster to tell people use the bin.

(SB) Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|----------|------------------------|
| 1- noisy | 2- posters |
| 3- help | 4- slowly 5- ride |

Language in use

Choose the correct word (can, can't, or able to) to complete each sentence:

- | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 1- can | 2- can't | 3- able to |
| 4- can | 5- able to | 6- can't |
| 7- able to | 8- able to | |

Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets:

- 1- I am able to finish my puzzle.
- 2- He can ride a horse.
- 3- She isn't able to reach the top shelf.
- 4- We can solve the math problem.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1- (b) traffic | 2- (c) garbage |
| 3- (b) sign | 4- (c) fast |
| 5- (d) ability | 6- (c) dangerous |

2- Read and complete using words from the box:

- 1- slowly 2- sign 3- dangerous 4- respect

3- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- Let's make our community a better place.
- 2- We can help the community to hang signs.
- 3- There's too much traffic in the city today.
- 4- Always try to be helpful to your neighbors.
- 5- Our local park is green and very beautiful.

4- (SB) Write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1- can not 2- able to 3- Can

5- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Let's hang new posters around the school park.
- 2- You should always drive slowly in neighborhoods.

Lesson 3

(SB) 1- Read, think and answer:

- 1- The beautiful rose started to lose her color and her petals became dry and weak.

- 2- He was unpleasant to look at.

- 3- The kind cactus smiled and shared his water with the rose.

- 4- The bird flew down and gently pecked at the cactus.

(SB) 2- Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1- T | 2- F | 3- F |
| 4- F | 5- T | |

(SB) 3- Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|----------|-------------------------|
| 1- dry | 2- rose |
| 3- soft | 4- proud 5- cactus |
| 6- water | 7- said sorry |

Exercises on Lesson 3

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1- (b) close | 2- (a) petals |
| 3- (d) summer | 4- (a) peck |
| 5- (b) cactus | 6- (a) proud |
| 7- (a) sparkles | |

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1- rose | 2- petals |
| 3- cactus | 4- weak |

4- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- Every story has a moral.
- 2- The officer helped the old woman friendly.
- 3- Does a cactus need much water?
- 4- Close friends are always here to help.
- 5- He apologized quickly for his behavior.

5- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- | | |
|----------------|--------|
| 1- the teacher | 2- sad |
|----------------|--------|

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- The teacher
- 4- It was an ugly color.
- 5- We should be more kind and helpful to each other, understanding that words can hurt.

Lessons 4-5

(SB) Read and answer:

- 1- He was born in Egypt.
- 2- Chemistry and nanoscience
- 3- With using gold nanoparticles.
- 4- Because he's a true hero of science and a source of pride for Egypt.

Exercises on Lessons 4&5

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1- (a) awards | 2- (d) tiny |
| 3- (d) idea | 4- (d) solution |
| 5- (d) pollution | |

Answers Key

2- Read and complete the text: 1- award 2- leftover 3- great 4- food bank

3- Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

- 1- The food bank collects the leftover food.
- 2- Many types of pollution have serious effect.
- 3- Our teacher is an expert in chemistry.

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (c) a biography 2- (b) nanoparticles

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Chemistry.
- 4- They help fight cancer.
- 5- at a famous university in the United States.

5- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Scientist made amazing discoveries at university.
- 2- Why does chemistry expert use tiny gold particles?

Practice 5 test on Unit 3

خاص بالآزهر الشريف

1- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- scared 2- paramedic
- 3- emergency 4- community
- 5- support

2- Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- 1- palace – (doctor) 2- hose – (cold)
- 3- angry – (go) 4- tiny – (give)
- 5- bench – (kind)

3- Choose the correct answer

- 1- control 2- architect
- 3- embarrassed 4- achievements
- 5- hang 6- research
- 7- are able 8- Can
- 9- can't 10- can't

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Answer the following questions:

- 1- Smoke and fumes from cars and factories.
- 2- We should turn off the tap while brushing our teeth.
- 3- To care for our planet.

B- Choose the correct answer

- 4- increase 5- cars

5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1- A paramedic is a very brave person.

- 2- This hose is used for cleaning.
- 3- They hung the signs on each entrance.
- 4- Tailors are good at making clothes.
- 5- We should protect the environment to live better.

Practice 6 test on Unit 3

1- Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- emergency 2- building
- 3- public transport 4- safe

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- tailor 2- precious
- 3- responsible

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- brilliant 2- research 3- learn 4- expert

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- paramedic 2- streets

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- A delivery person brings food to our homes.
- 4- To make the community better.

5- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- What solutions did you come up with?
- 2- Some scientists made brilliant discoveries.

6- The Story

A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F 2- T

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- He would show them in presentations later.
- 4- "Turn off the tap while brushing!"

7- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- is able to 2- Can

8- Punctuate the following sentence:

- 1- The architect planned the building with huge entrances.
- 2- What happened to the rose?

Practice 7 test on Units 1-2-3

خاص بالآزهر الشريف

1- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- doing 2- community
- 3- teacher 4- nurse
- 5- job

2- Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- 1- knew – (know)
- 2- computer – (digital camera)
- 3- Egypt – (Tanta)

- 4- kitchen – (rice)
- 5- women – (girl)

3- Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|--------------|--------------------|
| 1- goes | 2- are cleaning |
| 3- do | 4- can |
| 5- does | 6- traffic officer |
| 7- world | 8- fossil |
| 9- accompany | 10- peck |

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Answer the following questions:

- 1- In 1933.
- 2- Nanoscience is the study of very tiny things.
- 3- Because a scientific idea that was named after him.

B- Choose the correct answer

- 4- Ain Shams University
- 5- chemistry

5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1- He had a great love for learning.
- 2- Samy can see the birds standing on the tree.
- 3- Crocodiles live in the river, too.
- 4- They didn't build temples faraway the river.
- 5- There are mangrove trees near the beach.

Practice 8 test on Units 1-2-3

1- Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- sunny
- 2- Ras Mohamed National Park
- 3- coral reefs
- 4- Sharm El Sheikh

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- Water Resources Engineers
- 2- design
- 3- special

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box

- 1- moral
- 2- care
- 3- proud
- 4- each other

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (b) plants
- 2- (a) It makes the school and community more beautiful

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- They learn all about caring for plants.
- 4- They all work together to think and create a better, more beautiful place.
- 5- Helping the school and the community.

5- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- Helping each other makes us happy and proud,
- 2- This is a little work but important.

6- The Story

A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F
- 2- F

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Farida.
- 4- Water is life. We all need it, and we all need to protect it.

7- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)

between brackets:

- 1- help
- 2- cutting

8- Punctuate the following sentence:

- 1- For example, firefighters keep us safe.
- 2- It's a fun part of a day in my school.

Unit 4

Lesson 1

Exercises on Lesson 1

1- Read and complete the text:

- 1- papyrus
- 2- linen
- 3- museum
- 4- colorful

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (d) linen
- 2- (b) granit
- 3- (c) history
- 4- (b) long
- 5- (b) pots
- 6- (b) decorate
- 7- (a) gold
- 8- (c) amulet
- 9- (b) mummy
- 10- (a) cloth

3- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (c) wonderful
- 2- (b) jewelry

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- They used papyrus.
- 4- They used granite and clay.
- 5- Linen is made from the flax plant.

4- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- What materials did ancient Egyptians use?
- 2- They made beautiful jewelry from gold.
- 3- Egyptians used papyrus for writing in the past.
- 4- They made big statues from granite.

5- Punctuate the following:

- 1- The Ancient Egyptians used many materials.
- 2- Where did Nour see the papyrus scroll?
- 3- They made jewelry from gold and colored stones.
- 4- What is Omar working on?

Lesson 2

(SB) Read the words in bold and write:

Answers Key

- 1- pollute 2- protect 3- climate

(SB) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- (d) solar panels 2- (a) pollute
3- (c) waste 4- (b) protect

Exercises on Lesson 2

1- Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

- 1- (c) save 2- (b) Solar power
3- (b) pollute 4- (c) panels
5- (c) biking 6- (a) touch
7- (a) should 8- (b) wisely
9- (b) mustn't 10- (a) shouldn't

2- Read and complete using words from the box:

- 1- protect 2- solar panel
3- planet 4- energy

3- Complete the following sentences with (must / mustn't)

- 1- mustn't 2- must
3- mustn't 4- must

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (b) solar power 2- (a) pot

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Because it reduces the need for harmful fuels and protects the planet.
4- Closing the fridge quickly or using the right pot for cooking.
5- It protects the planet, reduces pollution, and keeps the environment clean.

5- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- You shouldn't waste energy at home.
2- Some energy like solar and wind, comes from nature.
3- We should use electricity wisely everywhere.
4- Children mustn't play near electric wires.
5- We should always try to save energy.

6- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- protect 2- Must
3- touch 4- mustn't pollute
5- come

7- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Should we use wind turbines that produce clean electricity?
2- The sun gives us light and heat.

Lesson 3

1- (SB) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F 2- T 3- T 4- F 5- F 6- T

2- (SB) Answer the following questions:

- 1- We call them minerals.
2- We find oil deep under the ground.
3- The soil in Egypt contains different kinds of minerals, which help plants grow big and strong.
4- They help Egypt grow and develop.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (a) money 2- (c) jewelry
3- (b) steel 4- (b) plants
5- (c) oil 6- (c) resources
7- (d) metal 8- (a) steel

2- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- money 2- Oil and Gas

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Oil, rocks, and metals
4- We use natural gas for cooking, heating homes, and generating electricity.
5- Oil is a black liquid.

3- Read and complete using words from the box:

- 1- gas 2- iron
3- money 4- gold

4- Listen and circle the word that has the /u/ sound (as in 'look'):

- 1- book 2- foot 3- good

5- Listen and circle the word that has the /u/ sound (as in 'spoon'):

- 1- root 2- glue 3- moon

6- Correct the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- must 2- should 3- mustn't
4- eat 5- do

7- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- Egypt has many valuable minerals.
2- Do we sell oil to other countries?
3- Gold is a beautiful and expensive metal.
4- We find iron in the Western Desert.
5- There are a lot of natural resources in Egypt.

8- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Gold is a beautiful yellow metal.
2- Egypt sells oil to other countries.
3- What do we use natural gas for?
4- Wow! these minerals are amazing.

Lessons 4-5

S.B Read and answer: Student's Book

- 1- A project about man-made resources for his English class.
- 2- By reading a book and searching the internet.
- 3- Pictures.
4. because it helped me understand new ideas, find accurate information, and learn more about the world around me.
5. Student's own answer

Exercises on Lessons 4&5

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- High Dam 2- crops 3- huge
- 4- Irrigation 5- drought

2- Fill in the blank with either made from or made of.

- 1- made from 2- made of
- 3- made from 4- made of
- 5- made from 6- made of
- 7- made from 8- made of

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- huge 2- save
- 3- irrigation 4- crops

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- bricks 2- colored stones

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Glass is made from sand.
- 4- Paper comes from trees.
- 5- Natural materials in Egypt. (Any acceptable answer)

5- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- The High Dam helps farmers with crops.
- 2- Dams are amazing man-made structures.
- 3- Natural materials are good for the environment.
- 4- Research gives us information about things.

5- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Farmers depend on good irrigation to grow healthy crops.
- 2- Where is glass often made in?

Practice 9 test on Unit 4

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1- Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1- temples 2- survive
- 3- electricity 4- protect

2- Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- 1- fridge (pyramids) 2- temple (electricity)
- 3- walk (clay) 4- habitat (vegetables)

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- write 2- save

- 3- irrigation 4- rain
- 6- check 7- should
- 8- study 9- must
- 10- Should

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- protect 2- energy

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- To light our homes and power our devices.
- 4- Solar panels.
- 5- To protect nature.

5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1- They made ancient temples from clay and other things.
- 2- Should we use energy wisely?
- 3- The High Dam prevents floods in Egypt.
- 4- You should turn off lights when you leave.
- 5- We save energy to help the planet.

Practice 10 on Unit 4

1- Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- pollute 2- make electricity
- 3- climate change 4- the future and nature

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- research 2- write and draw 3- careful

3- Read and complete the text:

- 1- huge 2- flood
- 3- electricity 4- better

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- rooftops 2- protect

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Solar panels collect solar power from the sun.
- 4- When we leave.
- 5- It keeps the planet clean and healthy.

5- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- The High Dam helps farmers to grow crops in Egypt.
- 2- Ancient Egyptians made bricks from clay.

6- The Story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T 2- F

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Water is life.
- 2- Turn off the tap while brushing!

7- Read and write the correct

- 1- shouldn't 2- keep

8 Punctuate the following sentence

1. The **H**igh **D**am gives electricity to **E**gyptian homes and factories.
2. **R**ecycling helps us save natural materials and resources.

Unit 5

Lesson 1

S.B. Read and check (✓) the correct sentence

- 1- b ✓ 2- a ✓ 3- a ✓

S.B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- (c) souvenir 2- (c) exhibition
3- (a) travel plan 4- (b) information desk

Exercises on Lesson 1

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- suitcases 2- luggage 3- souvenir
4- information desk 5- ticket

2- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- brochure 2- guided tour
3- souvenir 4- information desk

3- Read and answer the following questions:

A Choose the correct answer:

- 1- luggage 2- plan

B Answer the following questions:

- 3- France 4- A visit to Egypt.

(Any acceptable answer)

- 5- To buy a unique souvenir to remember his amazing trip

4- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- He packed his suitcase for the trip.
2- The tourist showed her passport at the airport.
3- You can find help at the information desk.
4- How many visitors joined the guided tour?

lesson 2

S.B. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- overcrowded 2- center
3- moving 4- sustainable

S.B. Read the text again. In which paragraph?

- 1- paragraph 2 2- paragraph 1
3- paragraph 3 4- paragraph 4

S.B. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F 2- T 3- T 4- F

Exercises on Lesson 2

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (c) cable car 2- (a) Luxury
3- (d) engineering 4- (c) made
5- (b) started 6- (a) bought
7- (d) clean 8- (d) caught

- 9- (b) Did you visit 10- (d) didn't book
11- (b) studied 12- (a) didn't they come
13- (b) rode 14- (b) plateau
15- (c) smart city 16- (b) water park
17- (a) vision

2- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- views 2- smart city
3- peaceful 4- beauty

3- Read and write the correct form of the word (s) in brackets

- 1- cleaned 2- wasn't
3- had 4- Did
5- finish 6- visited
7- built 8- didn't take
9- Did you see 10- didn't study
11- were 12- Did she pack
13- didn't like

4- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- She went to the beach yesterday.
2- They built a sustainable city last year.
3- We rode the cable car to the mountain.
4- He didn't study medicine at university.
5- Did you visit the Grand Egyptian Museum?

5- Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- The fisherman caught a big fish yesterday.
2- How does Al Galala City prove to be a wonder?

lesson 3

(SB) Listen and answer the following question:

The old man used a bundle to teach his sons a lesson: **Together you are strong but alone you can be broken easily.**

(SB) Circle the correct word

- 1- Farmer 2- worried
3- hard 4- together

(SB) Put the story events in the correct order. Write numbers (1-5)

The sons could not break the bundle of sticks. **3**
The old man showed his sons a bundle of sticks. **2**
The father gave them single sticks, and they broke them easily. **4**
The sons understood the lesson and started working together. **5**
The father asked his sons to stop fighting and work together. **1**

Exercises on Lesson 3

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- unity 2- stick 3- excited
4- single 5- bundle

2- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- wisdom 2- bundle
3- strength 4- unity

3- Read these definitions. Then, choose and write the correct story element: (SB)

- 1- setting 2- middle 3- characters
4- end 5- moral 6- beginning

4- Write the following words in the correct column

/t/: asked – watched – walked

/d/: cleaned – opened – played

/ɪd/: wanted – visited – ended

5- Read The text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- teacher 2- listened

(B) Answer the questions:

3- The helpful group lined up and passed the rocks hand-to-hand.

4- They didn't work in a teamwork with a leader.

They didn't listen to each other.

5- They listened to each other and shared ideas.

6- Put the words in order to make a complete sentence:

1- The sons couldn't break the bundle.

2- They work on a farm together.

7- Punctuate the following sentences:

1- The sons tried to break the bundle, but they failed.

2- Did the father smiled at his children?

Exercises on Lesson 4&5

1- Choose the correct answer between brackets:

- 1- (a) from the sun 2- (c) perfect
3- (b) to give or supply
4- (a) long-lasting and clean
5- (c) better 6- (d) to help
7- (b) cheap 8- (c) to make it less

2- Put the words in order to make sentences:

- 1- They should make a decision very soon.
2- We watched a movie in the middle of the day.
3- Did the farmer tie all the bundle together?

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- solar 2- pollution
3- saves 4- electricity

4- Punctuate the following sentences:

1- Egypt is a sunny country and ideal for solar

energy.

2- Was the lotus chalice was used in ceremonies?

Practice 11 on unit 5

خاص بالازهر الشريف

1- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- passport 2- luggage 3- brochure
4- souvenir 5- ticket

2- Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- 1- country (dusty) 2- apple (power)
3- transportation (teachers)
4- technology (present)

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- passport 2- souvenir 3- guided tour
4- cable car 5- unity 6- went
7- bought 8- leave 9- saw
10- didn't do

4- Read the Following Passage and Then Answer the Questions

A) Answer the Following Questions:

- 1- Last month.
2- Some students helped workers clean the panels carefully.
3- Yes, it was.

B) Choose the Correct Answer:

- 4- provide 5- cleaned

5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1- They will never argue with each other.
2- We always love to play games together.
3- How do the workers help the engineers with the project?
4- The Egyptian Grand Museum displays the Lotus chalice.
5- Why is clean energy important to people?

Practice 12 on unit 5

1- Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- reduce 2- villages
3- eternal life 4- ideal

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- brochure 2- provide 3- cable car

3- Read and complete the text with words in the box:

- 1- passport 2- book 3- pack 4- board

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- worked 2- struggling

B) Answer these questions:

- 3- They couldn't break it.

- 4- He taught them that when they work together, they find unity.
- 5- Working together making you strong and successful.

5- Put the words in correct order to make sentences

- 1- Benban Solar Park uses modern technology.
- 2- The local workers work with engineers.

6- The Story:

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T
- 2- F

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- Certificates of achievement
- 4- Mini-challenges to see who could save the most water.

Part (2) Revision

Revision on Unit 1

1- Choose the correct answer

- 1- b) 2- a) 3- d) 4- c) 5- d) 6- c)
- 7- b) 8- c) 9- a) 10- c) 11- b) 12- b)
- 13- a) 14- d) 15- c) 16- b) 17- d) 18- a)

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- d) 2- c) 3- b) 4- c) 5- d)
- 6- b) 7- d) 8- b) 9- a) 10- c)
- 11- b) 12- d) 13- a) 14- d) 15- d)
- 16- b) 17- c) 18- a) 19- d) 20- c)

3- Read and write the correct form:

- 1- reads
- 2- Do
- 3- don't
- 4- play
- 5- drinks
- 6- do
- 7- do not play
- 8- Does
- 9- go
- 10- study
- 11- sleeps
- 12- does
- 13- does not like
- 14- does not shine
- 15- does
- 16- sing

4- Read and complete the text:

- 1- wake up
- 2- dressed
- 3- pack
- 4- stand

5- Read and complete the text:

- 1- fishermen
- 2- catch
- 3- wooden
- 4- nets

6- Read and complete the text

- 1- fruits
- 2- harvest
- 3- feed
- 4- villagers

7- Read and complete the text:

- 1- spin
- 2- carpets
- 3- designs
- 4- souvenirs

8- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- I love to bake bread with my mom.
- 2- She wears beautiful bracelets on her wrist.

- 3- We buy souvenirs from the market.
- 4- The fishermen catch fish in the sea.
- 5- Colorful coral reefs are home to fish.
- 6- They don't like getting up early.

9- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Yes, he wants to go to school on time.
- 2- Let's have breakfast before we go.
- 3- Does the beautiful landscape have tall mountains?
- 4- He collects old coins from different countries.
- 5- The carpenter will make furniture for us.

Practice on Unit 1

1- Listen and circle the correct answer

- 1- a) local market
- 2- c) lamps and necklaces
- 3- d) ancient sites
- 4- b) carpenters

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- a) do
- 2- c) grow crops
- 3- a) loom

3- Read and complete the text:

- 1- Park
- 2- snorkel
- 3- marine
- 4- mountains

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

- 1- b) school bag
- 2- b) English
- 3- He gets dressed and has breakfast.
- 4- Students stand in line, salute the flag, and sing the national anthem.
- 5- "My School Day Routine"

5- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- The market was so busy yesterday.
- 2- I have breakfast and pack my school bag.

6- The Story:

- 1- (T)
- 2- (F)
- 3- They noticed that a tap kept dripping even when no one used it.
- 4- She said, "Water is life," and that we all need it and must protect it.

7- Read and write the correct form:

- 1- do
- 2- doesn't let

8- Punctuate the sentences:

- 1- They happily harvest the crops every season.
- 2- It's hard work, but I love being on the sea.

9- Write a text of 50 words:

My village is near the sea. Many fishermen live here. They work hard every day to catch fish for the community. The fishermen use boats and nets. Our community is close and helps each other. We enjoy fresh fish and beautiful views of the sea every day.

Revision on Unit 2

1- Choose the correct answer

- 1- b) flavor 2- a) Natural fertilizers
- 3- c) whale 4- d) pull out
- 5- a) fish 6- c) guide
- 7- b) Palm 8- d) national park
- 9- a) Dark 10- c) Nile
- 11- a) Weeds 12- d) heron
- 13- b) natural fertilizer
- 14- a) fossil museum 15- d) jasmine
- 16- b) Rainy 17- c) coral

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- c) are playing 2- b) am doing
- 3- a) are/doing 4- d) am not wearing
- 5- d) is cooking 6- b) are listening
- 7- c) is raining 8- a) are going
- 9- a) Are/brushing 10- d) aren't watching
- 11- a) isn't sleeping 12- d) aren't studying
- 13- d) Are/watching 14- c) Is/playing
- 15- b) Is/raining 16- b) is/crying
- 17- c) isn't eating 18- b) is writing
- 19- a) Are/cooking 20- c) isn't barking

3- Read and write the correct form:

- 1- are watching 2- is doing
- 3- is tidying 4- are talking
- 5- is raining 6- am wearing
- 7- are not studying 8- is not eating
- 9- Is Soha reading
- 10- Is your father working
- 11- are singing 12- are not playing
- 13- are you going 14- are not watching
- 15- is not sleeping
- 16- are the children doing
- 17- Is it snowing 18- is she crying
- 19- is not swimming
- 20- Is the teacher explaining

4- Read and complete the text:

- 1- weather 2- sky
- 3- guide 4- mint tea

5- Read and complete the text:

- 1- fertilizers 2- weeds
- 3- olives 4- bench

6- Read and complete the text:

- 1- skeleton 2- fossils
- 3- desert 4- hibiscus

7- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- The weather is windy and rainy today.
- 2- Olive trees grow in healthy soil.

- 3- Did you see the crocodile exhibit?
- 4- We saw the skeleton of a whale at the museum.
- 5- Can insects be harmful to plants?
- 6- A heron stood by the lake.
- 7- Palm trees give cool shade.
- 8- Do you care for the environment?

8- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Pull out weeds to help plants grow.
- 2- Mint tea has a fresh flavor.
- 3- The desert has huge sand dunes.
- 4- Dark clouds don't mean sunny weather.
- 5- Yes, ginger is a healthy spice.
- 6- Are fossils found in national parks?
- 7- The waterfall makes the rocks wet.

Practice on Unit 2

1- Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- b) mint
- 2- d) every morning
- 3- c) natural fertilizer
- 4- a) olives

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- d) camels 2- b) fish
- 3- a) Valley

3- Read and complete the text:

- 1- different 2- dark
- 3- wet 4- shade

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

- 1- b) crocodiles and tilapia
- 2- b) Nile River
- 3- The Nile River is very important because it provides water, supports animals, helps farmers grow crops, and allows people to travel by boat.
- 4- The Nile brings water to dry areas and its past floods brought rich soil that made farming easier and food plentiful.
- 5- People travel on the Nile River by boat.

5- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- I wanted to take a picture with my camera.
- 2- What animals did the students see near the lake?

6- The Story:

- 1- (F) 2- (T)
- 3- They made a plan to save water, walked around the school to find problems like leaky taps and running water, took notes and photos.
- 4- The school cleaner, Mr. Youssef, helped by fixing a leaking sink and explaining how a small drip could waste a lot of water every day.

7- Read and write the correct form:

Answers Key

- 1- is reading 2- aren't watching

8- Punctuate the sentences:

- 1- Malik is watching a football match now.
2- What do you know about the Nile River?

9- Write a text of 50 words:

A trip to Wadi El Rayan is amazing. You can see beautiful waterfalls, lakes, and many animals like birds, fish, and desert plants. People enjoy hiking, swimming, and taking photos of the nature. Wadi El Rayan is important because it protects wildlife, preserves natural habitats, and helps keep the environment safe. It's a special natural place that teaches us about conservation and the beauty of Egypt's nature.

Revision on Unit 3

1- Choose the correct answer

- 1- a) architect 2- b) thorns
3- a) nanoscience 4- d) paramedic
5- c) petals 6- b) mechanic
7- d) cactus 8- a) bin
9- d) delivery person 10- c) Signs
11- b) proud 12- a) biography
13- c) quickly
14- a) universities 15- d) beak
16- b) tailor 17- b) afraid
18- a) stem 19- b) posters

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- b) can't 2- b) can
3- c) are able to 4- d) can
5- d) can't 6- c) can
7- a) able 8- a) can't
9- c) can 10- b) can't
11- a) can 12- c) are able
13- b) can't 14- c) able
15- c) can't 16- c) able
17- b) can 18- c) isn't able
19- d) able to 20- c) is able

3- Read and write the correct form:

- 1- can't walk 2- Can you
3- cannot breathe 4- is able to solve
5- speak

4- Read and complete the text:

- 1- nanoscience 2- awards
3- principal 4- cancer

5- Read and complete the text:

- 1- scary 2- control
3- posters 4- officers

6- Read and complete the text:

- 1- bins 2- actions

- 3- difference 4- planet

7- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- The architect designs our new school.
2- Cactus plants survive in dry weather.
3- Birds peck food with their beaks.
4- Roses have beautiful petals, but also have thorns.
5- A scientist studies nanoparticles in chemistry.
6- Paramedics help in emergency situations.
7- They don't like getting up early.

8- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Can nanoscience cure cancer?
2- My classmates aren't noisy during tests.
3- Why do you study nanoscience?
4- The principal awarded students for their achievements.

- 5- Isn't that animal too scary?

Practice on Unit 3

1- Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- b) clothes
2- d) mechanic
3- c) traffic officer
4- c) keep the city beautiful

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- a) respect 2- b) doctor
3- b) harmful

3- Read and complete the text:

- 1- emergency 2- cleaners
3- important 4- safe

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

- 1- b) delivery person
2- a) community
3- A paramedic helps people in emergencies by giving them medical care quickly.
4- The job of a street cleaner is important because it keeps the roads clean and helps the community stay tidy and healthy.
5- An architect designs buildings, while a mechanic fixes cars. They use different skills for different kinds of work.

5- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- All jobs are important in our community.
2- People should not throw rubbish in the streets.

6- The Story:

- 1- (F) 2- (F)
3- He said, "Why do you care about water so much? It's just a few drops."
4- They stood beside her, proud and quiet, showing their support.

7- Read and write the correct form:

- 1- able 2- can (or) are able to

8- Punctuate the sentences:

- 1- The scientist made important discoveries.
2- Can I donate food to the poor people?

9- Write a text of 50 words:

We must always respect the road and follow road rules to stay safe. Drivers should drive slowly and never rush, especially near schools or busy streets. People must cross carefully using crosswalks and looking both ways. These small actions help prevent accidents and keep everyone in the community safe every day.

Revision on Unit 4

1- Choose the correct answer

- 1- b) papyrus 2- d) drought
3- b) bricks 4- d) Linen
5- b) electricity 6- d) Glass
7- a) irrigation 8- b) mummies
9- a) climate 10- b) Gold
11- b) flood 12- d) fuel
13- a) Clay
14- d) Ancient 15- b) Factories
16- a) plastic 17- b) Heroes

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- a) can 2- d) can
3- b) can't 4- d) able to
5- c) can 6- a) must
7- c) must 8- b) mustn't
9- d) must 10- a) must
11- b) should 12- a) should
13- c) should 14- d) shouldn't
15- a) should 16- b) shouldn't
17- c) mustn't 18- c) to
19- c) must 20- b) isn't able to
21- a) mustn't 22- b) mustn't
23- c) should 24- d) aren't able to

3- Read and write the correct form:

- 1- can't read 2- stop
3- talk 4- can swim
5- eat 6- drive
7- should bring 8- are able to jump
9- feed
10- Can your friend

4- Read and complete the text:

- 1- papyrus 2- linen
3- sculptures 4- granite

5- Read and complete the text:

- 1- Factories 2- resources
3- electricity 4- Wind

6- Read and complete the text:

- 1- irrigation 2- drought
3- floods 4- steel

7- Read and complete the text:

- 1- pollute 2- plastic
3- resources 4- difference

8- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Linen fabric comes from flax plants.
2- Bricks are usually made from clay.
3- Can huge electricity come from dams?
4- Floods from factories can harm crops and.
5- Mummies wore magical amulets for protection.
6- Oil and natural gas provide energy.
7- Irrigation helps greatly during drought seasons.
8- Does climate change really affect crops?
9- Heroes inspire positive development in society.
10- Isn't glass much stronger than granite?

9- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Why do we use colored cloth for ceremonies?
2- Gold and iron are valuable minerals.
3- Ancient Egyptians used papyrus for writing.
4- Plastic differs from natural materials.
Practice on Unit 4

1- Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. b) linen 2. c) colorful stones
3. a) clay 4. b) strong

2- Choose the correct answer

1. b) museum 2. a) Glass 3. b) Oil

3- Read and complete the text:

- 1- turning off 2- wisely
3- waste 4- devices

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

- 1- b) Egypt's resources
2- grow
3- Oil and gas.
4- Oil is found in the Western Desert and Sinai.
5- The High Dam protects the land from floods.

5- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- They used gold to make jewelry.
2- Bricks are made from clay and water.

6- The Story:

- 1- (F) 2- (T)
3- They believed in what they were doing.

Answers Key

4- she said that water is life and we need it and need to protect it.

7- Read and write the correct form:

1- mustn't 2- grows

8- Punctuate the sentences:

1- Egypt has many natural resources.

2- What does your father do?

9- Write a text of 50 words:

Egypt has important natural resources like oil, iron, and gold. Oil is used as an energy source and is one of the country's most important economic resources. Egypt also has large amounts of iron, which is used in making tools and buildings. Gold is used to make jewelry and contribute to the national income. These resources help support Egypt's economy and improve people's life.

Revision on Unit 5

1- Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1- b) Benban Solar Park | 2- a) ticket |
| 3- c) man-made | 4- c) plateau |
| 5- a) electricity | 6- b) Tutankhamun's mask |
| 7- b) luggage | 8- d) solar station |
| 9- b) guided tours | 10- a) Pharaohs |
| 11- c) information | 12- a) sustainable |
| 13- b) cable car | 14- b) book |
| 15- c) wisdom | 16- a) water park |
| 17- b) valuable | 18- d) bundle |
| 19- b) did | 20- b) travel plan |

2- Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1- b) finished | 2- b) finished |
| 3- b) went | 4- d) wasn't |
| 5- d) didn't | 6- a) didn't |
| 7- b) Did | 8- c) visit |
| 9- b) did | 10- d) travel |
| 11- b) did | 12- a) didn't |
| 13- c) last week | 14- c) Yesterday |
| 15- a) last Monday | 16- a) explain |
| 17- d) did | 18- a) bought |
| 19- b) did | 20- c) didn't |

3- Read and write the correct form:

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1- played | 2- didn't visit |
| 3- ate | 4- Were |
| 5- bought | 6- Did |
| 7- didn't understand | 8- did go |
| 9- saw | 10- didn't you come |

4- Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1- mask | 2- exhibition |
| 3- information | 4- pharaohs |

5- Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|----------------|-----------|
| 1- sustainable | 2- solar |
| 3- pollution | 4- cities |

6- Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1- local | 2- luggage |
| 3- pyramids | 4- amazing |

7- Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| 1- shows | 2- sustainable |
| 3- ticket | 4- ideal |

8- Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|------------|---------------------|
| 1- wisdom | 2- bundle of sticks |
| 3- history | 4- tours |

9- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Benban solar park uses solar energy.
- 2- Must I bring my passport?
- 3- You should stop fighting and work together.
- 4- The cable car offers sea views.
- 5- Tutankhamun's mask is extremely valuable.
- 6- This park feels peaceful today.
- 7- Modern technology helps run business.
- 8- Is the exhibition nearby?
- 9- Don't argue at the entrance!
- 10- Can I book a guided tour?

9- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Isn't that bundle of sticks unusual?
- 2- Pack your suitcases carefully.
- 3- Ancient temples show Pharaohs' wisdom.
- 4- The Grand Egyptian Museum looks amazing!.
- 5- Where's the information desk?

Practice on Unit 5

1- Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1.b) treasures from ancient Egypt
- 2.a) floods
- 3.d) clean streets
- 4.b) see projects

2- Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------|
| 1.a) valuable things | 2.b) museum |
| 3.a) electricity | |

3- Read and complete the text:

- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| 1- river | 2- move |
| 3- energy | 4- environment |

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

- 1- b) Egypt's important projects
- 2- b) new
- 3- It has thousands of ancient treasures.
- 4- It helps farmers grow their crops.

5- These projects help improve life for Egyptians and attract visitors from all over the world.

5- Put the words in the correct order:

1- The new capital city is very modern.

2- Many tourists visit Egypt to see its important projects.

6- The Story:

1- (T) 2- (F)

3- Some classes had mini-challenges to see who could save the most!

4- The head teacher gave the children certificates of achievement.

7- Read and write the correct form:

1- provides 2- came

8- Punctuate the sentences:

1- The High Dam is located in Aswan.

2- When will the museum open today?

9- Write a text of 50 words:

The Pyramids in Egypt are one of the most important historical places in the world. They are located in Giza, near Cairo. The pyramids were built as tombs for the kings and pharaohs of ancient Egypt. They attract tourists from all over the world and are considered one of the Seven Wonders of the World.

Part (3) Weekly Evaluation

Week 1: Based on Unit 1

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) buy souvenirs 2- d) make furniture
3- d) rules 4- c) landscapes
5- d) spend 6- c) hides
7- a) teach 8- d) don't
9- c) come 10- b) eats

Week 2: Based on Unit 1

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- d) harvest 2- b) loom
3- c) breeze 4- b) rug
5- c) salute 6- a) throw
7- b) has 8- b) stores
9- a) protect 10- d) make

Week 3: Based on Unit 2

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) weeds 2- d) natural fertilizer
3- a) mint 4- c) protect
5- d) shade 6- b) are watching
7- c) are trying 8- d) am trying
9- d) aren't watching 10- b) is making

Week 4: Based on Unit 2

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) soil 2- d) tilapias
3- b) Crocodile 4- a) Temple
5- a) provide 6- b) are preparing
7- a) are looking 8- c) are
9- b) Are 10- d) is barking

Week 5: Based on Unit 3

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) paramedic 2- d) architect
3- a) signs 4- c) cross
5- d) learn 6- c) find
7- d) can 8- a) able to
9- c) Can 10- d) can

Week 6: Based on Unit 3

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- d) petals 2- b) beak
3- a) cactus 4- b) embarrassed
5- c) pecked at 6- c) take
7- d) able to 8- c) Can
9- a) can 10- c) walk

Week 7: Based on Unit 4

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) solar power 2- a) flood
3- c) pollute 4- d) papyrus
5- a) irrigation 6- d) must
7- b) mustn't 8- a) must
9- c) shouldn't 10- a) must

Week 8: Based on Unit 4

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) wrapped 2- c) sustainable
3- a) environment 4- b) crops
5- c) electricity 6- a) shouldn't
7- d) mustn't 8- d) should
9- c) mustn't 10- a) shouldn't

Week 9: Based on Unit 5

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- c) exhibition 2- a) pack

Answers Key

- 3- b) guided tour 4- d) passport
5- b) national plan 6- a) saw
7- c) learned 8- a) read
9- b) went 10- d) bought

Week 10: Based on Unit 5

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- c) Grand Egyptian desk 2- d) information
3- d) exhibition 4- b) guided tour
5- b) plan 6- a) sent
7- b) didn't 8- c) Did
9- d) took 10- a) didn't

Week 11: General

1 Choose the correct answer: (Story)

- 1- d) water 2- b) tablet

2 Answer the questions: (Story)

1- they noticed something that made them stop. A tap in the school bathroom kept dripping, even when no one used it. In the garden, water overflowed from a broken pipe and formed little puddles near the walkway.
2- Their teacher smiled brightly and asked if they needed any help (how he could help them).

3 Choose the correct answer: (General)

- 1- d) guide 2- b) wet
3- a) crafts 4- c) repair
5- a) climate

Week 12: General

1 True or False: (Story)

- 1- F 2- T

2 Answer the questions: (Story)

1- Because they thought that it was just a few drops of water.
2- Ahmed used his tablet to take photos of the problems so they could show them later in their presentations.

3 Choose the correct answer: (General)

- 1- d) went 2- c) do
3- a) is playing 4- b) able to
5- c) mustn't

Week 13: General

1 Choose the correct answer: (Story)

- 1- turn off the tap while brushing
2- the school cleaner

2 Answer the questions: (Story)

1- The school hung their posters in bathrooms, classrooms, and near garden taps.
2- They received certificates of achievement.

3 Choose the correct answer: (General)

- 1- a) snorkel 2- c) bracelets
3- b) colored 4- d) national park
5- a) irrigation

Week 14: General

1 True or False: (Story)

- 1- F 2- F

2 Answer the questions: (Story)

1- "Turn off the tap while brushing!"
2- Saving water because water is our life.

3 Choose the correct answer: (General)

- 1- a) should 2- b) went
3- c) goes 4- d) is doing
5- b) can't

Part (4) Al-Azhar Practice

Al-Azhar Practice 1

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1- Do 2- do 3- favorite
4- around 5- fun

2 Circle the odd word and replace it:

- 1- dolphin → jewelry
2- paint → sea
3- green → angry
4- tigers → tailors
5- holiday → fall

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- market 2- coral reefs
3- make 4- tired
5- take 6- didn't
7- aren't 8- writing
9- able 10- plays

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Last month.
2- Gold jewelry and handmade bags.

3- Mint tea.

(B) Choose the correct answer:

4- ancient 5- shopkeepers

5 Reorder to make correct sentences:

- 1- We went to the museum to learn new things.
- 2- Many tourists like to buy souvenirs from the market.
- 3- What did Maged buy from the market?
- 4- We had a picnic under a big tree.
- 5- The school day ends at 1:30 p.m.

6 Write a paragraph of 5 sentences:

Our countryside is a peaceful place full of green fields. Last weekend, we went there for a picnic under the warm sun. The air was fresh, and we could hear the sound of ducks swimming in the pond. We walked along the grassy paths, enjoying the beauty all around us. Everyone felt joyful and relaxed, far away from the noise of the city.

Al-Azhar Practice 2

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- market 2- souvenir 3- sister
4- travel 5- train

2 Circle the odd word and replace it:

- 1- orange → plane
- 2- pen → meat
- 3- apple → hospital
- 4- banana → jump
- 5- father → architect

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- souvenirs 2- temple
- 3- crops 4- coral
- 5- email 6- went
- 7- is 8- bought
- 9- didn't 10- are

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- The Egyptian Museum in Cairo.
- 2- The golden mask of King Tutankhamun.
- 3- Some souvenirs.

(B) Choose the correct answer:

4- Cairo 5- ancient Egypt

5 Reorder to make correct sentences:

- 1- He drinks a glass of milk every morning.
- 2- He opened the window to let the fresh air in.

3- My mother cooked a delicious meal yesterday.

4- The school library has many interesting books.

5- The boat trip was exciting and fun.

6 Write a paragraph of 5 sentences:

The weather in Egypt is usually warm and sunny for most of the year. In the winter, it can be cool, especially in the mornings and evenings. Many tourists enjoy visiting during this season because of its weather. The cool breeze makes walking around the ancient monuments more comfortable. Overall, Egypt's weather is pleasant and full of sunshine.

Al-Azhar Practice 3

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- sea 2- fish 3- harbor
4- boat 5- morning

2 Circle the odd word and replace it:

- 1- bread → Giza
- 2- spoon → short
- 3- camel → sea
- 4- car → couch
- 5- rice → jeans
- 1- weather 2- ticket
- 3- bread 4- picture
- 5- hotel 6- visited
- 7- is writing 8- travel
- 9- eat 10- studied

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- To the airport.
- 2- To meet his uncle who came from London.
- 3- Stories about his trip.

(B) Choose the correct answer:

4- greeted 5- gift

5 Reorder to make correct sentences:

- 1- My father works in a big hospital.
- 2- They traveled to Aswan by train yesterday.
- 3- Our teacher gave us a new lesson.
- 4- We saw beautiful coral reefs in the sea.
- 5- He planted flowers in the garden last week.

6 Write a paragraph of 5 sentences:

Natural resources in Egypt are important for the country's economy. Gold is found in some areas, especially in the Eastern Desert. The

Western Desert has rich reserves of minerals and other valuable resources. Egypt also produces natural gas, which is used for energy and export. These resources help support industry and create jobs for many people.

Al-Azhar Practice 4

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1- home 2- finish 3- about
4- temples 5- project

2 Circle the odd word and replace it:

- 1- football → Russian
2- board → school
3- shirt → cheese
4- rice → run
5- window → T-shirt

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- fixed 2- flowers
3- coin 4- camera
5- birds 6- go
7- watched 8- am reading
9- cleaned 10- walk

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- In Egypt.
2- For drinking, farming, and fishing.
3- To enjoy its beautiful view.

(B) Choose the correct answer:

- 4- longest 5- countries

5 Reorder to make correct sentences:

- 1- The camel carried goods across the desert.
2- We will visit the museum next Saturday.
3- We enjoyed a picnic in the park.
4- The farmers work hard in the fields.
5- We stayed in a small hotel by the sea.

6 Write a paragraph of 5 sentences:

Last summer, we went on a school trip to visit the High Dam in Aswan. Our guide explained how the dam produces electricity for homes and factories across Egypt. It also stores water for farming and provides energy for many industries. We were amazed by its size and the power of the flowing water. The visit helped us understand how important the High Dam is for the country's development.

Practice 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- in a small village
2- solar
3- a mechanic
4- visit a museum

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- c) desert 2- b) buy souvenirs
3- d) farmer

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- smart 2- solar
3- electricity 4- pollution

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) the parts of a plant
2- d) water

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- It holds the leaves and flowers.
4- Sunlight.
5- Plants and how they grow.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- It's important to protect our planet.
2- We need to water the plants.

6 The Story:

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- (T)
2- (F)

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- They took the certificate for their hard work.
2- The school hung their posters in bathrooms, classrooms, and near garden taps.

7 Read and write the correct form:

- 1- help 2- are planting

8 Punctuate the following:

- 1- We went to the museum last Sunday.
2- What is your favorite animal?

9 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words:

In my community, there are many important jobs that help people every day. A paramedic works hard to save lives during emergencies and gives first aid to the injured. A mechanic repairs cars and machines to keep them running safely. Both jobs are essential. They make our community safer, stronger, and better for everyone.

Practice 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- b) the Aswan High Dam
- 2- b) it generates electricity
- 3- a) Lake Nasser 4- c) protect them

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) tailor 2- c) uniform
- 3- a) Climate change

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- bricks 2- granite
- 3- colored stones 4- gold

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) 1933
- 2- a) Ain Shams University

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- A Brilliant Egyptian Scientist.
- 4- He traveled to the United States to continue his scientific research and further his career.
- 5- A well-known figure in the scientific community.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- It is important to save water and energy.
- 2- My grandma has a linen dress.

6 The Story:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (b) 2- (a)

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- One poster read, "Turn off the tap while brushing!" and another said, "Every drop counts. Fix leaks fast!"
- 2- "Why do you care about water so much? It's just a few drops."

7 Read and write the correct form:

- 1- keep 2- likes

8 Punctuate the following:

- 1- Are you happy with your new school?
- 2- We should keep our city clean.

9 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words:

Protecting our planet is everyone's responsibility. We can help by reducing pollution from factories, cars, and waste. Recycling is an important way to reuse materials like paper, plastic, and glass instead of throwing them away. These actions keep our air and water clean. Together, we can

make the Earth healthier for future generations.

Practice 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- a) In South Sinai
- 2- b) coral reefs and fish
- 3- c) She went snorkeling
- 4- b) keep their place clean

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) information desk
- 2- d) traffic officer 3- a) fishing net

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- moral 2- care
- 3- proud 4- community

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) smart cities
- 2- a) technology

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- They use solar energy, electric buses, and have many green spaces to reduce pollution.
- 4- Apps to find out about public transport or to pay for things.
- 5- To prevent accidents.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- The sea has beautiful coral reefs.
- 2- The Aswan High Dam generates electricity.

6 The Story:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (c) 2- (c)

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- To be Water Savers.
- 4- She made bright, cheerful posters.

7 Read and write the correct form:

- 1- planted 2- is making

8 Punctuate the following:

- 1- What is your favorite color?
- 2- It is a beautiful day today.

9 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words:

My visit to the museum was an exciting experience. A museum is a place where we can see and learn about history, art, and science. I usually visit it during school trips or holidays. I like it because it teaches me new things in a fun way. Each visit feels like an adventure through time.

Answers Key

Practice 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- a) in a modern city
- 2- c) a tailor
- 3- b) solar energy
- 4- c) saves lives

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) mechanic 2- a) solar power
- 3- a) flood

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- marine 2- coral
- 3- safe 4- important

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- c) play with friends
- 2- a) after a long day of learning

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- They study math, science, and English.
- 4- Students learn different subjects and take part in fun activities at school. They also play with friends and do their homework after school.
- 5- They go to their classrooms.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- She baked a delicious cake yesterday.
- 2- Where can visitors ask for help?

6 The Story:

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- (T) 2- (F)

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- A tap in the school bathroom kept dripping, even when no one used it. In the garden, water overflowed from a broken pipe and formed little puddles near the walkway.
- 4- To be Water Savers.

7 Read and write the correct form:

- 1- should 2- are visiting

8 Punctuate the following:

- 1- It's windy in Alexandria.
- 2- How long is the Nile River?

9 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words:

My dream job is to be a doctor in the future. I want to help sick people get better and live

healthy lives. I like this job because it is important and helps the community. Being a doctor also teaches patience and kindness. It is a job full of purpose.

Practice 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- d) Bedouins
- 2- c) move from place to place
- 3- b) wool
- 4- b) using a loom

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- d) mechanic 2- b) stem
- 3- b) pollution

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- chemistry 2- nanoparticles
- 3- discoveries 4- awards

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- c) the Aswan High Dam
- 2- a) Nasser

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- The text talks about the Aswan High Dam, its benefits, and the importance of protecting Egypt's resources.
- 4- They can go sailing and fishing.
- 5- It was built to control the floods of the River Nile.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- It's important to help the environment.
- 2- He likes to make clothes as a tailor.

6 The Story:

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- (T) 2- (F)

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- They started by walking around the school with a notebook, a camera, and curious eyes.
- 4- The school hung their posters in bathrooms, classrooms, and near garden taps.

7 Read and write the correct form:

- 1- visited 2- is reading

8 Punctuate the following:

- 1- What is your favorite color?
- 2- We should help our community.

9 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words:

My favorite subject is science. I like it because it teaches me about the world, nature, and how things work. I enjoy doing experiments and discovering new facts. Science is fun and helps me think in creative ways. It is a subject that inspires me to learn more every day.

Practice 6

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- a) fishing
- 2- b) wheat
- 3- b) market
- 4- c) life

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- c) stone 2- b) paper
- 3- b) ancient

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- passport 2- book
- 3- pack 4- board

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) history
- 2- b) irrigation

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- They visit the pyramids, temples, and the River Nile.
- 4- Because it has sunny weather most of the year.
- 5- The text describes Egypt's history, tourism, farming, and use of solar power to protect the environment.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Benban Solar Park uses modern technology.
- 2- The engineers work with local workers.

6 The Story:

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- (T) 2- (F)

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- They started by walking around the school with a notebook, a camera, and curious eyes.
- 4- The school hung their posters in bathrooms, classrooms, and near garden taps.

7 Read and write the correct form:

- 1- plays 2- respect

8 Punctuate the following:

- 1- Egypt has sunny weather most of the year.

2- What does Maha collect in the morning?

9 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words:

The importance of unity can be seen in how cooperation and group work lead to success. When people work together, they share ideas and support each other. Cooperation makes solving problems easier. Group work helps everyone use their strengths. Unity builds trust and makes any community or team stronger and happier.

Practice 7

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- b) tents
- 2- a) camels and goats
- 3- a) carpets and jewelry
- 4- d) share stories

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) plant 2- b) gold
- 3- d) flax

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- protected 2- materials
- 3- crafts 4- machines

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) markets and historic sites
- 2- d) jewelry

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- They see markets, historic sites, and daily life along the Nile.
- 4- Because it is warm and clean.
- 5- They see wooden boats sailing peacefully.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Villagers work hard to protect the environment.
- 2- The Bedouins live in tents in the desert.

6 The Story:

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- (F) 2- (F)

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- They noticed something that made them stop. A tap in the school bathroom kept dripping, even when no one used it. In the garden, water overflowed from a broken pipe and formed little puddles near the walkway.
- 4- They decided to be water savers.

Answers Key

7 Read and write the correct form:

- 1- doesn't 2- were

8 Punctuate the following:

- 1- The Nile River is very long.
2- Where do the villagers live?

9 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words:

Helping others is very important in our daily lives. Teamwork allows people to work together to solve problems and complete tasks. Sharing is another way to help, whether it is sharing food, knowledge, or time. When help others, we make them happy and create a caring and strong community.

Practice 8

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- a) water crops
2- c) tomatoes and cucumbers
3- b) planting and harvesting
4- a) grow well

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) electrical 2- c) bricks 3- b) paper

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- energy 2- pollution
3- factories 4- environment

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) gold and granite
2- b) clean

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- Gold and granite.
4- It provides electricity to power irrigation systems and farms.
5- Because Egypt's climate is dry and hot for most of the year.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Where did you go last night?
2- Ras Mohamed is a famous national park.

6 The Story:

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- (T) 2- (T)

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- Mr. Youssef, the school cleaner.
4- The school hung their posters, supported them and gave them certificates.

7 Read and write the correct form:

- 1- were 2- shouldn't

8 Punctuate the following:

- 1- Farmers grow crops with irrigation.
2- Solar energy is clean and useful.

9 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words:

Protecting our planet is very important for the future. Saving water helps keep our environment healthy and provides enough for everyone. Working together makes it easier to take care of nature. People can plant trees, clean rivers, and use less energy. Small actions by many people can make a big difference.